



DUKE  
UNIVERSITY  
LIBRARY

*Treasure Room*

GIFT OF  
History 9, 1927-28

THE  
TROOPER'S MANUAL:

OR,

TACTICS

FOR

Light Dragoons and Mounted Riflemen.

COMPILED, ABRIDGED AND ARRANGED,

BY

COL. J. LUCIUS DAVIS,

GRADUATE OF THE UNITED STATES MILITARY ACADEMY,  
WEST POINT; FORMERLY AN OFFICER OF THE UNITED  
STATES ARMY; AND FOR MANY YEARS COMMANDER  
AND INSTRUCTOR OF VOLUNTEER CAVALRY.

109785

RICHMOND, VA.  
PUBLISHED BY A. MORRIS.  
1861.

---

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1861.

By A. MORRIS,

In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the CONFEDERATE STATES, for the Eastern District of Virginia.

---

Hist 9, 1927-28  
Cover  
37  
W. K. Boyd  
1.50

Ten-N  
Comp  
1211  
H  
D-2627

## PREFACE.

---

No military work is in more demand at present than a cheap, plain, brief compendium of Cavalry Tactics.

All books of this description, heretofore published, are too large and costly to serve as manuals for the Trooper. They abound, too, in matter of no interest, at least, to Mounted Volunteers.

As a general rule, what have the latter to do with the *tactics of the riding-house?* or the drill of Lancers, Hussars, Cuirassiers, or Carabiniers?

The *revolver-manual*, adopted in this work, is the admirable one of Capt. BELL, U. S. Cavalry. It is superseding the defective one given in every Cavalry hand-book which has preceded this. The demand for this work being immediate, the Compiler has ventured to avail himself of that manual for the revolver, without having had time or opportunity to obtain the author's permission.

109785

The Mounted Rifle drill offered is the authorized one of the United States service prepared by Capt. MAURY of the Mounted Rifles, under the orders of the War Department.

The order of the Secretary of War establishes this drill, with its *single rank formation for all mounted troops*, the double rank system being retained for *garrison service only*.

In fact, this formation, (the single rank,) recommended by Capt. McCLELLAN of the Military Commission to Europe, and approved by our best Cavalry commanders, is the only one suited to actual service in any portion of the American Continent.

But as two ranks answer for garrison service in peace, for reviews, parades, and manœuvres in contracted limits, both the single and the two rank drills are given in this book—only one, viz. the two rank formation, being found in other works.

The originals have been faithfully copied, except where error demanded correction, not more than fifty pages (including notes, remarks, and Glossary) having been introduced by the Compiler, as demanded by recent improvements in arms and otherwise.

*General and Field Officers* and Superintendents of Riding Schools will require more extended treat-

tises, embracing the whole subject of Equitation; but the Compiler hopes that this little volume provides all necessary instruction for every grade, from the Trooper to the Commander of the Squadron.

THE COMPILER.

RICHMOND, VA., *April*, 1861.





## INTRODUCTORY REMARKS.

---

CAVALRY is a general term, embracing, in its modern and more extended sense, all classes of mounted soldiery..

DRAGOONS were originally armed with muskets, and were trained equally for Cavalry and Infantry service.

In the United States service, Cavalry and Dragoons are armed and drilled alike, the distinction being merely nominal.

MOUNTED RIFLES differ from other Cavalry in arms, manœuvres, and in habitually dismounting for the combat, their horses being chiefly the means of rapid locomotion.

All American Cavalry should be well trained on foot in the Light Infantry exercises; should carry a light rifle, (as well as sabre and pistol,) and use the fire-arms mostly on foot.

For actual service, the regular Cavalry saddle and equipments are necessary. The Mexican sad-

dle, however, is generally preferred by the Mounted Rangers of the Western frontier.

Fancy hats, with plumes of ostrich or other feathers, are only suitable on parades and reviews, but, on campaign, they are a useless incumbrance.

A conical forage-cap, with water-proof cover extending, when unrolled, to the shoulders; a water-proof cape reaching from the neck to the hips; one close-bodied coat, one round jacket, one over-coat, and two pairs of pants, (the four latter of dark-blue or gray cloth,) together with undergarments and short-top boots, constitute the proper apparel for all mounted troops.

The Cavalry Taetics, from the drill of the Trooper to that of the Squadron, both inclusive, should be acquired by all Cavalry Corps. The peculiar organization and manœuvres of the Mounted Rifles will be confined to that class of troops; but they, too, should be instructed in the general principles, laid down in the following pages, for all Cavalry exercises, adding what appertains to their own branch of the service.

Volunteers, who are generally expert horsemen, sometimes enter with reluctance into the minutiae of mounting, dismounting, the prescribed management of the arms and legs, and the elementary rules of equitation; but every item should be prac-

tised in detail until thoroughly understood ; as they become more familiar with them, they will more fully appreciate their importance.

A troop-horse, when thoroughly trained, can be guided by the arms and legs alone, thus allowing the trooper the use of both hands, if necessary in combat.

The following rules are presented substantially as laid down in the prescribed tactics, the Compiler having no authority to make any important alterations in the authorized text-books.



# CAVALRY TACTICS.

---

## PART FIRST.

---

### Drill of the Trooper.

For the first lessons, it is best to charge each instructor with a *very small squad of recruits, having between them intervals of one yard.*

But it is sometimes necessary, especially with volunteers, for one single Instructor to take charge of a platoon, or even a squadron. In this case, they may be arranged in one rank, (which is best) or in two ranks along the sides of a square; all facing inwards toward the Instructor, who will execute in person all the motions, or will cause them to be executed by a well-drilled trooper, stationed in the centre.

Having acquired thoroughly the motions of mounting and dismounting, the whole may be formed into a platoon or squadron, according to numbers present. When two ranks are used, they should be six yards distant, measured from head to tail.

## To conduct the horses to the drill ground.

The trooper conducts his horse to the ground, the reins passed over the neck, and their extremity engaged in the left cloak-strap.\* He holds the reins with the right hand at six inches from the mouth of the horse, the nails under, the hand elevated and firm, to prevent the horse from jumping.

*When the trooper is under arms, he has the sabre hooked up.*

*The carbine is passed over the right shoulder, the left hand hanging by the side.*

*Having arrived on the ground, the sabre is unhooked.*

## Position of the trooper before mounting.

The trooper places himself on the left side of the horse, abreast of the nether jaw; he holds the reins with the right hand at six inches from the mouth of the horse, the nails downward.

The trooper has his heels upon the same line and as near together as his conformation will permit, the feet at little less than a right angle, and equally turned out; the knee straight without being stiff, the body perpendicular upon the haunches, and slightly inclined forward; the left hand hanging at the side, the palm a little turned out, the little finger along the seam of the pantaloons; the head

---

\*In the absence of cloak-straps, any other mode of attaching the reins to the pommel may answer.

erect; the chin drawn in, but without constraint; the eyes fixed to the front.

*When the trooper is under arms, he has the left hand over the sabre.*

## To Mount.\*

The instructor commands:

PREPARE TO MOUNT.

*1 time, 2 motions.*

1. At the command *prepare to mount*, Nos. 1 and 3 of each rank move six paces to the front, stepping off with the left foot, keeping opposite their intervals, and regulating by the right.

Place the right foot three inches in rear of the left; make a face and a half to the right on both heels; let go the right rein; slip the right hand along the left rein; take two steps, stepping off with the right foot, and face to the left upon the point of the left foot, the right side towards the flank of the horse; carry back the right heel three inches in rear of the left; the right hand seizing the end of the reins is placed upon the cantle of the saddle.

2. Place a third of the left foot in the stirrup, supporting it against the fore-arm of the horse; rest upon the point of the right foot, and seize with the

---

\*The trooper being aligned with the tallest on the right, the orderly sergeant, (or senior non-commissioned officer) calls the roll before mounting.

left hand over the reins—a lock of the mane as far forward as possible, the extremity of the lock passing out of the hand on the side of the little finger.

### Mount.

*1 time, 2 motions.*

1. At the command MOUNT, spring from the right foot, holding firmly to the mane, at the same time pressing upon the cantle to prevent the saddle from turning; the body erect.

2. Pass the right leg stretched over the croup of the horse, without touching him; sit lightly in the saddle, placing at the same time the right hand, without quitting the reins, upon the right holster, the palm of the hand resting upon it, the fingers on the outside of it, and take one rein of the snaffle in each hand.\*

(If the trooper is using the curb-bridle, he will pass the reins of it in the left hand and adjust them.)

Place the right foot in the stirrup.

Let fall the carbine by the side.†

### Position of the bridle-hand.

The reins with their slide in the left hand, the little finger between the reins, the other fingers well

\*The reins of the snaffle are thus held by recruits and beginners in equitation. The practised horseman will take his riding reins at once *in his left hand* on mounting.

†The carbine (or rifle) is suspended by a strap over the left shoulder.



closed, and the thumb upon the second joint of the first fingers; the elbow slightly detached from the body, the hand four inches above the pommel of the saddle, the finger six inches from, and turned towards the body; the little finger a little nearer the body than the upper part of the wrist, the right hand at the side.

### Length of the stirrups.

Having commenced the exercise, the instructor assures himself that the stirrups are properly adjusted.

They are the proper length if, when the trooper raises himself on the stirrups, there is a space of six inches between the fork and the saddle.

### Position of the foot in the stirrup.

The stirrup should support only the weight of the leg; the foot ought to be inserted one-third of its length, the heel lower than the toe.

*The stirrup should support only the weight of the leg:* if the trooper bore too much upon the stirrups, his seat would be deranged, as well as the position of the legs and the justness of their action would be impaired.

*The foot ought to be inserted one-third of its length:* if the trooper did not insert the foot sufficiently far in the stirrup, he would risk losing them, particularly during the lively gaits. If the foot were inserted too far, the legs would not fall naturally.

*The heel lower than the toe:* that the foot may keep the stirrup without effort and without stiffness; that the play of the joint with the leg may remain free, and that the spur being further removed from the horse, there is less danger of its being improperly employed.

*Form—RANKS.*

At the last part of the command, which is RANKS, Nos. 1 and 3 raise the wrist (of the bridle hand), and hold the legs close to the body of the horse to keep him quiet; Nos. 2 and 4 enter the intervals without jostling and without precipitation.

The rear rank being formed, closes to the distance of 2 feet from the front.

Before causing the command MOUNT to be executed, the instructor explains in detail the two times of it, and allows but a short interval between the first and second part of this command, because, were the trooper to remain a long time on the stirrup, the horses would become restive and move out of their proper places.

The instructor will explain to the troopers, that in carrying the right hand to the holster before placing themselves in the saddle, they will be able to do so lightly, and will not run the risk of injuring themselves in bestriding their horses.

The instructor causes the stirrups to be crossed upon the neck, the left stirrup over the right.\*

## The position of the trooper, mounted.

The buttocks bearing equally upon the saddle, and as far forward as possible;

The thighs turned upon their flat side without effort, embracing equally the horse, and stretched only by their own weight and that of the legs;

A supple bend of the knees;

---

\* This is usually omitted in volunteer-cavalry exercises.

- The legs free and falling naturally;  
 The point of the feet falling in like manner; (i. e. when not in the stirrups.)  
 The loins supported without stiffness;  
 The upper part of the body at ease, free and erect;  
 The shoulders equally thrown back;  
 The arms free, the elbows falling naturally;  
 The head erect, at ease, and not drawn in between the shoulders;

One rein of the snaffle in each hand, the fingers closed, the thumb along each rein, the wrists as high as the elbow, at 6 inches from each other, the fingers turned towards each other, the upper extremity of the reins leaving the hand on the side of the thumb.\*

*The buttocks bearing equally upon the saddle:* Serving as a base to the position of the trooper, they ought to be equally charged with all the weight of the body to assure its steadiness.

*And as far forward as possible:* In order that the trooper may have greater facility in embracing his horse, and conforming to all his movements.

*The thighs turned upon their flat side without effort, embracing equally the horse:* The more the thighs adhere to the horse, the greater is the solidity of the trooper. If they did not embrace the horse equally, the seat of the trooper would be unfixed.

*And stretched only by their own weight and that of the legs:* If they did not fall naturally, they could be extended only by an effort, which would cause constraint.

---

\* NOTE. This paragraph, referring to the mode of holding the snaffle rein, is not applicable to volunteer cavalry who are generally expert horsemen.

*A supple bend of the knees:* To give a facility in carrying the legs more or less to the rear, without deranging the position of the thighs.

*The legs free, and falling naturally, the point of the feet falling in like manner:* Stiffness in the legs would impair the good effects of their action.

*The loins supported without stiffness:* The loins should be sustained, to give the trooper grace and solidity.—Stiffness would prevent his accommodating himself to all the motions of the horse.

*The upper part of the body at ease, free and erect:* The body can preserve its erectness only by suppleness and ease.

*The shoulders equally thrown back:* Were the shoulders thrown forward, the back would be curved and the breast contracted; were they thrown too much to the rear, the loins would be hollowed and the action of the arms constrained.

*The arms free:* In order not to employ more force than is absolutely necessary; constrained movements produce uncertain effects.

*The elbows falling naturally:* That they may contribute to the steadiness of the seat, and communicate stiffness neither to the body nor fore-arms.

*The head erect:* If the head were not erect, the body would lean towards the side it inclined to.

*At ease, and not drawn in between the shoulders:* To be able to turn it with ease, and that its movements may be independent of those of the body.

## The use of the reins.

The reins serve to prepare the horse for the movements he is required to execute, to direct him, and to stop him. Their action should be progressive and in accordance with that of the legs.

When the trooper makes use of the reins, the arms should act with suppleness, and their movements ought to extend from the wrist to the shoulder.

### The use of the legs.

The legs serve to urge the horse forward, to support him, and to aid him in turning to the right and to the left. Whenever the trooper wishes his horse to move forward, he should close the legs by degrees behind the girths, causing their effect to correspond with the sensibility of the horse, taking care neither to open nor elevate the knees, of which the bend should be always pliant. The trooper relaxes the legs by degrees, as he closed them.

### The effect of the reins and legs combined.

By elevating a little the left wrist, and closing the legs, the trooper "gathers his horse;" by elevating again the wrist, he slackens the pace; by repeating this movement of the wrist, he stops the horse, or "reins back." The troopers ought to elevate the wrists without curving them, at the same time drawing them slightly towards the body.

By opening the right rein and closing the right leg, the trooper turns his horse to the right. To open the right rein, the wrist is carried, without

turning it, more or less to the right, according to the sensibility of the horse.

By opening the left rein, and closing the left leg, the trooper turns his horse to the left. To open the left rein, the left wrist is carried, without turning it more or less to the left, according to the sensibility of the horse.

By lowering slightly the wrist, the horse is at liberty to move forward; the closing the legs determines the movement.\*

### To march.

The instructor commands:

1. *Squad* (or *company*, or *platoon*) *forward*.
2. MARCH.

At the command *squad forward*, elevate slightly the wrists, and close the legs, in order to "gather the horse."

At the command MARCH, lower slightly the wrists, and close the legs more or less, according to the sensibility of the horse. The horse having obeyed, replace the wrists and the legs by degrees.

If the trooper did not gather his horse at the preparatory command, the execution of the second command would be too abrupt or too slow.

If the trooper, at the command of execution, did not commence by lowering the wrist, the horse would not have the liberty necessary to enable him to move forward.

If the trooper did not close equally the legs, the horse would not move directly to the front; and if he did not

---

\* The wrist of the bridle hand is of course meant.

close them progressively, the horse would not obey without irregularity.

## To halt.

After some steps, the instructor commands:

1. *Squad.*

2. HALT.

At the command *squad*, the trooper gathers his horse, without slackening his pace.

At the command HALT, the trooper braces himself in the saddle; elevate the wrists at the same time by degrees, and close the legs in order to prevent the horse from receding. The horse having obeyed, replace the wrists and the legs by degrees.

When the horse does not obey, cause him to feel successively the effect of each rein, according to his sensibility.

If the trooper pressed the horse with the thighs or legs it would be difficult for him to stop.

If he did not use the two reins equally, and hold the legs equally near, the horse would stop in a diagonal position.

If the trooper used the reins with too much force and precipitation, the horse would stop suddenly and fall back.

## To turn to the right, and to the left.\*

The instructor commands:

1. *Squad to the right (or to the left.)*

2. MARCH.

3. HALT.

---

\* In practising the turnings, let intervals be taken of 3 yards, from boot to boot.

At the command, *squad to the right*, gather the horse.

At the command MARCH, open the right rein, and close progressively the right leg. In order not to turn the horse too short, perform the movement upon a quarter of a circle of 3 paces.\* The movement being almost completed, diminish the effect of the rein and the right leg, supporting the horse at the same time with the left rein and leg to terminate the movement.

At the command HALT, elevate slightly the wrists, and hold the legs near, in order to keep the horse straight in the new direction; replace the wrists and the legs by degrees.

If the trooper did not describe the arc of the prescribed circle, the movement would be too much shortened.

If the trooper, towards the end of the movement, did not diminish the effect of the right rein and the right leg, by means of the left rein and left leg, the horse would perform more than a turn to the right.

## To turn-about to the right, and to the left.

The instructor commands:

1. *Squad to the right-about* (or *to the left-about*)
2. MARCH.
3. HALT.

This movement is executed on the principles prescribed for the *turn to the right* or *to the left*,

---

\*That is, a circular path or track 3 yards in length.



with this difference, that the horse should pass over a semi-circle of 6 paces, and face to the rear.

In order to make the trooper comprehend better the movements detailed, the instructor places himself at the shoulder of the horse, and describes each movement on foot, in marking off the arc of the prescribed circle.

To make a quarter-turn to the right and  
to the left.

The instructor commands.

1. *Squad right oblique*, (or *left oblique*.)
2. MARCH.
3. HALT.

At the command *Squad right oblique*, gather the horse.

At the command MARCH, open a little the right rein, and close slightly the right leg, in order to make the horse execute a *quarter turn to the right*; cause the horse to feel, almost at the same time, the effect of the left rein and the left leg, to terminate the movement without increasing the degree of obliquity.

At the command HALT, elevate slightly the wrists and close the legs, to keep the direction of the *quarter-turn to the right*; replace the wrists and legs by degrees.

The instructor commands HALT almost immediately after the command MARCH; he does not require great exactness in this movement, the object of which is, to give the trooper the first idea of the oblique direction.

The movements detailed, after having been executed to the right, are executed to the left, according to the same principles, but by inverse means.

## To rein-back, and to cease rein-back.

The instructor commands :

- |                            |                  |
|----------------------------|------------------|
| 1. <i>Squad—Backwards.</i> | 3. <i>Squad.</i> |
| 2. MARCH.                  | 4. HALT.         |

At the command *Squad backwards*, gather the horse.

At the command MARCH, keep a firm seat, elevate the wrists, and close the legs. As soon as the horse obeys, lower and elevate successively the wrists, which is called *yielding and checking*. If the horse throws the haunches to the right, close the right leg; if he throws them to the left, close the left leg. If these means are not sufficient to replace the horse in his proper position, open the rein on the side towards which the horse throws his haunches, causing him to feel, at the same time, slightly, the effect of the opposite rein.

At the command *squad*, the trooper prepares to stop.

At the command HALT, lower the wrists and close the legs. The horse having obeyed, replace the wrists and legs by degrees.

If the trooper did not keep a firm seat, he would incline forward, from the effect of the movement of the horse.

If, instead of lowering and elevating the wrists alternately, the trooper were to prolong the effect of the

hands, the horse would step back suddenly, and would cross or throw himself upon his haunches.

## To dismount.

The instructor commands :

### 1. PREPARE TO DISMOUNT.

*1 time, 2 motions.*

1. At the command PREPARE to DISMOUNT, Nos. 1 and 3 of the front rank move forward 6 paces, Nos. 2 and 4 of the rear rank rein-back 4 paces, and keep themselves opposite their intervals. The troopers of each rank dress by the right.

Seize the carbine with the right hand, at the lower band ; pass it over the right shoulder diagonally, the muzzle in the air, so that it cannot fall back.

Seize the reins of the snaffle (or of the curb-bridle) above and near the left thumb with the right hand, the nails downward, and place this hand upon the right holster. Disengage the right foot from the stirrup, and seize with the left hand a lock of the mane over the reins.

### DISMOUNT.

*1 time, 2 motions.*

1. At the command DISMOUNT, rise upon the left stirrup ; pass the right leg extended over the croup of the horse, without touching him, and bring the right thigh near to the left, the body well sustained ; place at the same time the right

hand upon the cantle of the saddle, slipping it along the reins without letting them go; descend lightly to the ground, the body erect, the heels upon the same line. Let go the mane with the left hand; engage the extremity of the reins in the left cloak-strap with the right hand, which then seizes the left rein.

2. Make a face and 2 steps to the left, stepping off with the left foot; slip the right hand along the left rein, seize with the same hand both reins at 6 inches from the mouth of the horse, the nails downward, and take the *position of the trooper before mounting*.

#### *Form*—RANKS.

At the last part of the command, which is RANKS, Nos. 1 and 3 of each rank elevate slightly the right hand to keep the horse quiet; Nos. 2 and 4 return to their intervals gently.

### To file off.

The instructor commands:

1. *By the right (or by the left)*—FILE OFF.
2. MARCH.

At the last part of the first command, which is FILE OFF, hook up the sabre; use both hands to unhook the curb and unbuckle the nose-band; re-take the reins with the right hand, and replace the left hand at the side.

At the command MARCH, the trooper of the right, in each rank, steps off with the left foot,

leading his horse to the front; he takes 4 steps, turns to the right, and marches in the new direction, holding at the same time the hand high and firm to prevent the horse from jumping. Each trooper in each rank executes successively the same movement, when the one who precedes him has moved 4 paces to the front.

*To leap to the ground;* the trooper, holding the reins of the snaffle as prescribed, seizes with the left hand a lock of the mane, the fingers well closed; places the right hand upon the pommel, raises himself upon the wrists, brings the right thigh to the side of the left, remains an instant in this position, and descends lightly to the ground.

*To leap on the horse;* the trooper seizes the mane with the left hand, places the right hand which holds the reins upon the pommel of the saddle, springs lively, raising himself upon the two wrists, remains an instant in this position, and places himself lightly in the saddle.

The instructor sometimes gives the command *to rest in marching*, in order to calm the horses after a quick pace, and to relieve the troopers who may become fatigued. During the *rest in marching*, the troopers relax themselves a little; but without changing the pace and without losing their distance. The conductors always regulate the march.

Being halted, to commence the move at  
a trot.

The commands are :

1. *Column forward.*

2. *Trot.*

3. MARCH.

At the command *trot*, gather the horse.

At the command MARCH, lower the wrists and close the legs progressively; as soon as the horse obeys, replace the wrists and the legs by degrees.

### Marching at a trot, to halt.

The troopers marching *at a trot*, and in column, the instructor commands:

1. *Column.*

2. HALT.

At the command *column*, gather the horse.

At the command HALT, elevate the wrists by degrees, until the horse stops; and hold the legs always near, to keep him straight and to prevent his stepping back. The horse having obeyed, replace the wrists and the legs by degrees.

The instructor requires all the troopers to set off freely *at the trot*, at the command MARCH, and to stop all together, without jostling, at the command HALT.

### To pass from the trot to the trot-out, and from the trot-out to the trot.

The troopers marching *at the trot*, and in column, the instructor commands:

#### TROT-OUT.

At this command, lower a little the wrists and close the legs progressively; as soon as the horse obeys, replace the wrists and the legs by degrees.

The gate being lengthened to a suitable degree, the instructors see that the troopers keep their horses up to it.

He pays particular attention to the position of the troopers. He reminds them that it is in holding the body erect, having a light hand, the loins supple, and in allowing the thighs and legs to fall naturally, they can diminish the effect of the reaction of the horse, and conform more readily to all his motions.

To prevent the horses from over-reaching, it is necessary to raise the wrists and close more or less the legs.

To passage from the *trot-out to the trot*, the instructor commands:

### SLOW TROT.

At this command, elevate the wrists by degrees and close the legs, to prevent the horse from taking *the walk*; as soon as the horse obeys, replace the wrists and the legs by degrees.

## To pass from the trot to the gallop.

The instructor commands:

1. *Gallop.*

2. MARCH.

At the command GALLOP, gather the horse and keep him perfectly straight.

At the command MARCH, carry the hand slightly forward and to the left, to enable the right shoulder to move in advance of the left, and close the legs behind the girths in order to urge the horse forward, causing him to feel lightly the effect of the left leg. The horse having obeyed, hold a light hand and the legs near, to keep him' at his gait.

The instructor requires the troopers to be perfectly calm, to conduct their horses with mildness, and particularly to preserve a light hand that the gallop may be free and regular.

To passage to the right or to the left.

The commands are :

- |                                 |                  |
|---------------------------------|------------------|
| 1. <i>Right (or left) pass.</i> | 3. <i>Squad.</i> |
| 2. MARCH.                       | 4. HALT.         |

At the command *right pass*, bear the shoulders of the horse to the right, opening a little the right rein, and closing the right leg.

This movement is only preparatory ; it indicates to the trooper that the shoulders of his horse should always commence the march, and precede the movement of the haunches.

At the command MARCH, open the right rein to incline the horse to the right, closing at the same time the LEFT leg that the haunches may follow, without leaning the body to the left ; make use of the left rein and the right leg to support the horse and moderate his movement.

At the command HALT, cause to cease insensibly the effect of the right rein and the left leg, employing the opposite rein and leg ; straighten the horse and replace the wrists and legs by degrees.

To passage to the left, and to halt, employ the same principles and inverse means.



## The principal movements of the bridle-hand.

By raising slightly the hand and drawing it in towards the body, the trooper gathers his horse; by raising it still more, the gait is made slower. By increasing the effect of the hand, the horse is stopped; if increased still more, the horse is reined back.

By lowering slightly the hand, the horse is at liberty to move forward.

By carrying the hand forward and to the right, the horse is turned to the right.

By carrying the hand forward and to the left, the horse is turned to the left.

As soon as the horse obeys, the bridle-hand resumes its original position.

In all the movements of the hand, the arm should act freely, without communicating constraint to the shoulder or body; the effect of the curb being more powerful than that of the snaffle, it should be used progressively, particularly in stopping and reining back.

### To gather the horse.

Elevate slightly the hand, drawing it at the same time towards the body, and close the legs.

### To march.

Lower slightly the hand, the wrist always opposite the middle of the body, and close the legs pro-

gressively. As soon as the horse obeys, replace the hand and legs by degrees.

### To halt.

The trooper braces himself in the saddle; elevate the hand by degrees, drawing it towards the body, and close the legs to keep the horse straight, and prevent him from stepping back. As soon as the horse obeys, replace the hand and the legs by degrees.

### To turn to the right.

Carry the hand forward and to the right, according to the sensibility of the horse; close the right leg, the left leg held near to sustain him. The movement being nearly finished, replace the hand and the legs by degrees.

### To turn to the left.

Carry the hand forward and to the left, according to the sensibility of the horse; close the left leg, the right leg held near to sustain him. The movement being nearly finished, replace the hand and legs by degrees.

### To turn-about to the right and to the left.

The same principles as prescribed to execute a turn to the right, or to the left, observing to pass over a semi-circle.

To make a quarter-turn to the right, and  
to the left.

The same principles as prescribed to execute a turn to the right, or to the left, observing that the movement of the hand does not require the horse to do more than make a quarter-turn to the right, or to the left.

To rein back, and to cease reining back.

The same principles as prescribed for the halt, observing, as soon as the horse obeys, to lower and raise the hand alternately, that the movement may be regular.

To cease reining back. relax the effect of the hand and close the legs; as soon as the horse obeys, replace the hand and the legs by degrees.

### Of the spur.

If the horse does not obey the legs, it is necessary to employ the spur.

It is only necessary to use it occasionally, but always vigorously, and at the moment the horse commits the fault.

In order to use the spurs, it is necessary to keep steady the body, the waist and the wrists; to cling to the horse with the thighs and the calves of the legs; turn the point of the feet a little out; lower a little the wrists; press the spurs close behind the

girths, without moving the body, and let them remain there until the horse obeys ; replace then the wrists and the legs by degrees.

When the troopers employ the spur, the instructor observes that they do not bear too much upon the reins, which would counteract the effect of the spur. He also observes that the troopers do not use the spur unnecessarily.

### Preparation for the sabre exercise.

The instructor causes the sabre exercise to be executed at a halt ; for this purpose he opens the ranks, and commands :

1. *By the left* (or *by the right*)—*open files*.
2. MARCH.
3. *Right* (or *left*)—DRESS.
4. FRONT.

At the command MARCH, the right trooper of each rank moves forward 6 paces ; the one on the left of each rank turns *to the left*, and moves forward ; he is followed by all the other troopers of his rank, who execute the same movement as soon as they have the necessary space to put themselves in file at their proper distances. The second trooper from the right of each rank, after having marched 3 paces, turns and dresses to the right ; each of the other troopers look occasionally to the rear, and perform successively the same movement when at three paces from the one who follows him, and dresses upon those already formed ; the troopers

of the rear rank place themselves exactly behind their file-leader.

After the command MARCH, the instructor moves to the right of the front rank, and when the second trooper from the right has turned to the front, he commands: *Right—DRESS*. After having rectified the alignment and the distances in the two ranks, he commands: FRONT.

When the instructor wishes to form the platoon, he commands :

1. *To the right (or to the left)—close files.*
2. MARCH.

At the command MARCH, the right trooper of each rank moves forward 6 paces; all the other troopers execute a turn to the right and move forward.

Each trooper, on arriving within 2 paces of the place he is to occupy in line, turns to the left, and places himself on the left of the troopers already formed, and dresses to the right.

The instructor closes the ranks as soon as they are formed.

## The sabre manual.

### DRAW—SABRE.

*2 times.*

1. At the first part of the command, which is DRAW, incline slightly the head to the left, carry the right hand above the reins, engage the wrist in the sword-knot; seize the gripe, disengage the

blade six inches from the scabbard, and turn the head to the front.

2. At the last part of the command, which is **SABRE**, draw quickly the sabre, raising the arm to its full length; hold the sabre in this position an instant, then carry it to the right shoulder, the back of the blade supported against the hollow of the shoulder, the wrist upon the top of the thigh, the little finger on the outside of the gripe.

*Present*—**SABRE**.

1 *time*.

At the last part of the command, which is **SABRE**, carry the sabre forward, the thumb opposite to and 6 inches from the neck, the blade perpendicular, the edge to the left, the thumb along the right side of the gripe, the little finger joined to the other three.

*Carry*—**SABRE**.

1 *time*.

At the last part of the command, which is **SABRE**, replace the sabre, the back of the blade supported against the hollow of the shoulder, the wrist upon the upper part of the thigh, the little finger outside of the gripe.

**RETURN**—**SABRE**.

2. *times*.

1. At the first part of the command, which is **RETURN**, execute the movement of *present sabre*.

2. At the last part of the command, which is

SABRE, carry the wrist opposite to and 6 inches from the left shoulder, lower the blade, passing it near the left arm, the point to the rear; incline the head slightly to the left, and fix the eyes upon the mouth of the scabbard; return the blade, disengage the wrist from the sword-knot, turn the head to the front, and adjust the reins.

*Inspection (of)*—SABRE.

1 time, 7 motions.

1. At the last part of the command, which is SABRE, execute the first time of *draw sabre*.
2. Execute the second time of *draw sabre*.
3. Present the sabre.
4. Turn in the wrist, in order to show the other side of the blade.
5. Carry the sabre to the shoulder.
6. Execute the first time of *return sabre*.
7. Execute the second time of *return sabre*.

## Manual of arms, in marching.

The troopers are required to *draw sabre*, and to *return sabre*, while marching in column *at a walk*.

The instructor observes that neither the seat, nor the position of the bridle hand is deranged. He also requires the troopers to keep their legs near, in order to prevent the horses from slackening the gait. When the troopers have the sabre drawn, the instructor observes that they do not throw back the right shoulder.

As the troopers become more skilful, they are required to *draw sabre*, in marching first *at the trot*, and then *at the gallop*. They also take the position of the first motion

of *in tierce point*, and *front cut*, in marching at the different gaits.

The troopers are taught to take the position of the sabre for the *charge*, as front rank and as rear rank. For this purpose the instructor commands :

*As front rank*—RAISE SABRE.

1 *time*.

At the last part of the command, which is SABRE, take the position of *in tierce point*.

The instructor then causes the sabre to be carried, and commands :

*As rear rank*—RAISE SABRE.

1 *time*.

At the last part of the command, which is SABRE, take the position of the first motion of *front cut*.

These movements are executed successively at the different gaits.

The sabres are returned in marching *at a walk*; for this purpose the troopers are directed to support the back of the blade against the left arm, until the point has entered the scabbard.

The troopers are exercised, *sabres drawn*, in turning *to the right* and *to the left* at the *trot* and at the *gallop*, and *to the right-about*, and *left-about*, at the *trot* only.

## Sabre exercise at all gaits.

The troopers execute progressively, at the different gaits, the exercise of the sabre, taking care to preserve between each other the distance of 3 yards.



Let the other motions of this exercise be first taught to the troopers DISMOUNTED.

Preparatory to all cuts and thrusts, the commander or instructor opens his ranks and then orders,

1. *By the left* (or *by the right*)—OPEN FILES.
2. MARCH.
3. *Right* (or *left*)—DRESS.
4. FRONT.

At the last part of the first command, which is OPEN FILES, all face to the left except the first file.

At the command MARCH, the men step off together. The second man from the right, after having marched, for the *sabre exercise* 5 paces, halts, fronts by a right face, and dresses on the right file who has not moved. The others march on, and each one glancing over his right shoulder, halts in succession, and fronts when he has arrived at his place. The rear rank men regulate themselves by their file-leaders, and remain exactly behind them.

When the third man from the right has fronted, the instructor dresses the front rank; the assistant instructor dresses the rear rank, and the instructor commands FRONT.

When the instructor wishes to form the platoon, he commands:

1. *To the right* (or *to the left*)—CLOSE FILES.
2. MARCH.

At the last part of the first command, which is CLOSE FILES, the men all face to the *right* (or *left*), except the file on which they close.

At the command MARCH, they step off together, and each one fronts in succession by a right face (or left face), when he has closed up to the man who precedes him.

After the ranks are formed, the instructor closes and dresses them.

At first the motions are executed in detail by the numbers; but when the troopers execute all the motions with regularity, the instructor requires each cut to be given without decomposing it; the last syllable of a command is the signal for the quick execution of it. All the cuts are then terminated by a half-moulinet, which brings back to the position of GUARD.

The objects of the moulinet is to render the joints of the arm and wrists supple, and as it adds to the confidence of the men when isolated, by increasing their dexterity, they should first be exercised at it, as a preparation for the other motions.

Each lesson is therefore commenced and ended with moulinets, executed with a quickness proportioned to the progress of the troopers. The instructor pays particular attention that the men do not employ a degree of force in the sabre exercise, which not only is less necessary than skill and suppleness, but which is even prejudicial. He observes, also, that they do not lean to one side, in such a manner as to lose the seat when mounted; he requires more especially, in the motions of the sabre to the rear, that the blade shall not fall too near the body, for fear of wounding the horse. In describing a circle, the flat of the blade should be to the side and the edge to the front, and it should be so directed as not to touch either the horse's head, or his haunches, or the knees of the rider.

Thrusts should always be used in preference, as they require less force, and their result is more prompt, sure, and decisive. They should be directed quickly *home* to the body of the adversary, the sabre being held with the full grasp, the thumb pressing against the guard in the direction of the blade.

The parries against the lance are the same as against the point.

The instructor explains what is meant by *right and left side of the gripe*; by *tierce* and by *quarte*.

*The right side of the gripe* is the side opposite to the guard.

*The left side of the gripe* is the side next to the guard.

*Tierce* is the position in which the edge of the blade is turned to the right, the nails downwards.

*Quarte* is the position in which the edge of the blade is turned to the left, the nails upwards.

*To rest*, the instructor conforms to what is prescribed. In this case, he causes the sabre to be returned.

## Sabre exercise.

The troopers being placed as prescribed, the instructor orders the sabres to be drawn.

He commands :

GUARD.

1 *time*.

At the command GUARD, carry the right foot 2 feet from the left, the heels on the same line; place the left hand closed, 6 inches from the body, and as high as the elbow, the fingers towards the body, the little finger nearer than the thumb (*position of the bridle hand*); at the same time, place the right hand in tierce at the height of, and 3 inches from, the left hand, the thumb extended on the back of the gripe, the little finger by the side of the others, the point of the sabre inclined to the left, and 2 feet higher than the hand.

*Left—MOULINET.**1 time, 2 motions.*

1. At the last part of the command, which is MOULINET, extend the right arm to the front, to its full length, the hand in tierce and as high as the eyes.

2. Lower the blade in rear of the left elbow; graze the horse's neck quickly, describing a circle from rear to front, and return to the position of guard.

*Right—MOULINET.**1 time, 2 motions.*

1. At the last part of the command, which is MOULINET, extend the right arm to the front to its full length, the hand in quarte, and as high as the eyes.

2. Lower the blade in rear of the right elbow; graze the horse's neck quickly, describing a circle from rear to front, and return to the position of guard.

To execute the moulinet without stopping, if the instructor wishes to begin by the left, he commands :

*Left and right—MOULINET.**1 time, 2 motions.*

If he wishes to begin by the right, he commands :

*Right and left—MOULINET.**1 time, 2 motions.*

At either of these commands, the troopers, commencing from the position of GUARD, execute alter-

nately what is laid down, without stopping at any motion.

*Rear*—MOULINET.

1 *time*, 2 *motions*.

1. At the last part of the command which is MOULINET, raise the arm to the right and rear to its full extent, the point of the sabre upwards, the edge to the right, the thumb extended on the back of the gripe, the body slightly turned to the right.

2. Describe a circle in rear from left to right, the hand as far as possible from the body, and return to the position of guard.

When the troopers execute the moulinets well, the instructor requires them to execute several in succession, until the command GUARD.

*In tierce*—POINT.

1 *time*, 3 *motions*.

1. At the last part of the command, which is POINT, raise the hand in tierce as high as the eyes, throw back the right shoulder, carrying the elbow to the rear, the point of the sabre to the front, the edge upwards.

2. Thrust to the front, extending the arm to its full length.

3. Return to the position of guard.

*In quarte*—POINT.

1 *time*, 3 *motions*.

1. At the last part of the command, which is POINT, lower the hand in quarte near the right hip,

the thumb extended on the right side of the gripe, the point a little higher than the wrist.\*

2. Thrust to the front, extending the arm to its full length.

3. Return to the position of guard.

### *Left*—POINT.

1 *time*, 3 *motions*.

1. At the last part of the command, which is POINT, turn the head to the left, draw back the hand in tierce towards the right, at the height of the neck, the edge upwards, the point directed to the left.

2. Thrust to the left, extending the arm to its full length.

3. Return to the position of guard.

### *Right*—POINT.

1 *time*, 3 *motions*.

1. At the last part of the command, which is POINT, turn the head to the right, carry the hand in quarte near the left breast, the edge upwards, the point directed to the right.

2. Thrust to the right, extending the arm to its full length.

3. Return to the position of guard.

\*The first position of the hand is with the finger-nails turned towards the hip, the edge of the sabre downward; as the thrust is made, the edge is turned to the left and the nails brought forward.

*Rear—POINT.**1 time, 3 motions.*

1. At the last part of the command, which is POINT, turn the head to the right and rear, bring the hand in quarte opposite to the right shoulder, the arm half extended, the blade horizontal, the point to the rear, the edge upwards.

2. Thrust to the rear, extending the arm to its full length.

3. Return to the position of guard.

*Against infantry left—POINT.**1 time, 3 motions.*

1. At the last part of the command, which is POINT, turn the head to the left, raise the hand in tierce near the neck, the point of the sabre directed at the height of the breast of a man on foot.

2. Thrust down in tierce.

3. Return to the position of guard.

*Against infantry right—POINT.**1 time, 3 motions.*

1. At the last part of the command, which is POINT, turn the head to the right, carry the hand in quarte near the right hip, the point of the sabre directed at the height of the breast of a man on foot.

2. Thrust in quarte.

3. Return to the position of guard.

*Front—CUT.**1 time, 3 motions.*

1. At the last part of the command, which is CUT, raise the sabre, the arm half extended, the hand a little above the head, the edge upwards, the point to the rear and higher than the hand.

2. Cut, extending the arm to its full length.
3. Return to the position of guard.

*Left—CUT.**1 time, 3 motions.*

1. At the last part of the command, which is CUT, turn the head to the left, raise the sabre, the arm extended to the right, the hand in quarte, and as high as the head, the point higher than the hand.

2. Cut diagonally to the left.
3. Return to the position of guard.

*Right—CUT.**1 time, 3 motions.*

1. At the last part of the command, which is CUT, turn the head to the right, carry the hand opposite to the left shoulder, the point of the sabre upwards, the edge to the left.

2. Extend the arm quickly to its full length, give a back-handed cut horizontally.
3. Return to the position of guard.

The cuts are also used against infantry, observing to direct them downward.



*Rear—CUT.**1 time, 3 motions.*

1. At the last part of the command, which is *CUT*, turn the head to the right, throwing back the right shoulder; carry the hand as high as, and opposite to the left shoulder, the sabre perpendicular, the edge to the left.

2. Extend the arm quickly to its full length, and give a back-handed cut horizontally to the rear.

3. Return to the position of guard.

*Right, in tierce and quarte—CUT.**1 time, 4 motions.*

1. At the last part of the command, which is *CUT*, execute the 1st motion of *right cut*.

2. Execute the 2d motion of *right cut*.

3. Turn the hand in quarte, and cut horizontally.

4. Return to the position of guard.

*Left in quarte and tierce—CUT.**1 time, 4 motions.*

1. At the last part of the command, which is *CUT*, execute the 1st motion of *left cut*.

2. Execute the 2d motion of *left cut*.

3. Turn the hand in tierce, and cut horizontally.

4. Return to the position of guard.

*Rear, in tierce and quarte—CUT.**1 time, 4 motions.*

1. At the last part of the command, which is *CUT*, execute the 1st motion of *rear cut*.

2. Execute the 2d motion of *rear cut*.
3. Turn the hand in *quarte*, and cut horizontally.
4. Return to the position of guard.

*In tierce*—PARRY.

1 time, 2 motions.

1. At the last part of the command, which is PARRY, carry the hand quickly a little to the front and right, the nails downwards, without moving the elbow; the point inclined to the front as high as the eyes, and in the direction of the right shoulder; the thumb extended on the back of the gripe, and pressing against the guard.

2. Return to the position of guard.

*In quarte*—PARRY.

1 time, 2 motions.

1. At the last part of the command, which is PARRY, turn the hand and carry it quickly to the front and left, the nails upwards, the edge to the left, the point inclined to the front, as high as the eyes, and in the direction of the left shoulder; the thumb extended on the back of the gripe, and resting against the guard.

2. Return to the position of guard.

*For the head*—PARRY.

1 time, 2 motions.

1. At the last part of the command, which is PARRY, raise the sabre quickly above the head, the

arm nearly extended, the edge upwards, the point to the left, and about 6 inches higher than the hand.

The hand is carried more or less to the right, left, or rear, according to the position of the adversary.

2. Return to the position of guard.

*Against infantry right—PARRY.*

1 time, 3 motions.

1. At the last part of the command, which is PARRY, turn the head to the right, throwing back the right shoulder, raise the sabre, the arm extended to the right and rear, the point upwards, the hand in tierce, the thumb extended on the back of the gripe, the edge to the left.

2. Describe a circle quickly on the right from rear to front, the arm extended; turn aside the bayonet with the back of the blade, bringing the hand as high as the head, the point upwards.

3. Return to the position of guard.

*Against infantry left—PARRY.*

1 time, 3 motions.

1. At the last part of the command, which is PARRY, turn the head to the left, raise the sabre, the arm extended to the front and right, the point upwards, the hand in tierce, the thumb extended on the back of the gripe, the back of the blade to the front.

2. Describe a circle quickly on the left, from front to rear along the horse's neck, the arm ex-

tended ; turn aside the bayonet with the back of the blade, bringing the hand, still in tierce, above the left shoulder.

3. Return to the position of guard.

When the troopers begin to execute correctly the above cuts, thrusts and parries, the instructor requires them to make the application of them by combined motions, as follows :

*In tierce*—POINT AND FRONT CUT.

*In quarte*—POINT AND FRONT CUT.

*Left*—POINT AND CUT.

*Right*—POINT AND CUT.

*Rear*—POINT AND CUT.

*Against infantry right*—POINT AND CUT.

*Against infantry left*—POINT AND CUT.

CARRY—SABRE.

As it is prescribed, and carry the right foot by the side of the left.

After the troopers have acquired the sabre-exercise on foot, they must practice it on horseback, at all the gaits.

Of course it would be better to study the sabre-manual under the instruction of a skillful swordsman, but as *perfect accuracy* is not essential, the trooper may acquire all that is necessary by attention to the rules given, and frequent practice.

## Manual for Colt's revolver.

The preliminary instructions in the use of the *Revolver* should always be given on foot, but the following *Manual* will apply equally well either

on foot or mounted. In the instruction on foot, the trooper should be brought to the position of "*guard*" in the sabre exercise, so as to assimilate his motions to those he will execute when mounted.

In the following Manual for Colt's revolver, the term "*holster*" is applied equally to the holster of the saddle or its substitute on the belt.

The trooper being in position, the *instructor* will command:

### DRAW PISTOL.

*1 time, 2 motions.*

1. At the command, unbuckle the *holster*, seize the *pistol* by the handle with the last three fingers and palm of the hand, the fore-finger extended outside the holster, so as to be placed on the guard when the *pistol* is partially withdrawn, the thumb on the back of the handle.

2. At the command "*two*," draw the *pistol* from the *holster*, placing the fore-finger on the guard; raise it, placing the right wrist at the height and 6 inches in front of the right shoulder; the barrel of the pistol perpendicular, guard to the front.

To load the pistol the instructor will command:

### LOAD IN SIX TIMES.—1 LOAD.

*1 time, 2 motions.*

1. Place the *pistol* in the left hand, the little finger on the point of the *key*, the muzzle inclined to the left, and front and upwards at an angle of *sixty degrees* to the horizon, half cock the pistol

with the right thumb, the right hand grasping the handle.

2. Let go the pistol with the left hand, turn it with the right, and seize it with the left; the hammer between the thumb and fore-finger, the middle finger on the guard, the last two fingers and palm of the hand grasping the handle, and carry the right hand to the cartridge box, and open it.

## 2. HANDLE CARTRIDGE.

*1 time, 1 motion.*

Take a cartridge from the *box* with the thumb and first two fingers and carry it to the mouth.

## 3. TEAR CARTRIDGE.

Tear off the end of the *cartridge* with the teeth and carry it opposite the chamber nearest the lever and on the side next the trooper.

## 4. CHARGE CARTRIDGE.

*1 time, 1 motion.*

Empty the powder into the chamber and press the ball in with the fore-finger, seize the end of the lever with the thumb and two first fingers of the right hand.

## 5. RAM CARTRIDGE.

*1 time, 1 motion.*

Bring down the lever with the right hand, at the same time turning the *cylinder* with the thumb and fore-finger of the left, until the charged chamber

comes in prolongation of the lever, ram home the charge and carry the right hand to the *cartridge box*, leaving the lever in the charged chamber.

Repeat as above until all the chambers are charged, and after charging the last one return the lever, the thumb and two first fingers remaining on the end of it.

## 6. PRIME.

1 time, 2 motions.

1. Seize the handle of the *pistol* with the right hand below the left, turn it with the guard to the front, muzzle to the left and front, and elevated *sixty degrees* above the horizon, and place it in the left hand, the little finger on the point of the *key*; turn the *cylinder* with the right hand until it clicks, and carry the right hand to the *cap box* and open it.

2. Take a cap, press it on the exposed cone, turn the *cylinder* again until it clicks, and carry the right hand again to the *cap box*.

Repeat the second motion until the priming is completed; then seize the *pistol* at the handle with the right hand, let down the hammer, and bring the *pistol* to the second position of "*draw pistol*."

To fire the *pistol* the *instructor* will command:

## READY.

1 time, 2 motions.

1. Place the *pistol* in the left hand, the little finger touching the *key*, the muzzle to the left and

front, and elevated at an angle of *sixty degrees* to the horizon, the guard under, the thumb on the cock, the fore-finger on the guard.

2. Cock the pistol with the thumb and return to the second position of "*draw pistol.*"

#### AIM.

1 time, 1 motion.

Lower the muzzle and carry the right hand to the front of the neck, half extending the right arm, place the fore-finger lightly on the trigger, close the left eye and aim horizontally.

#### FIRE.

1 time, 1 motion.

Press the fore-finger gradually, but quickly on the trigger, fire and return to the second position of "*draw pistol.*"

Should the *instructor* desire to have all the charges fired, he will give an intimation to that effect, and after bringing the trooper to the position of "*ready,*" he will command :

1. AIM.

2. FIRE.

Which will be executed as prescribed. After firing the first charge, the troopers will go through the motions of "*ready,*" "*aim,*" and "*fire,*" and so continue until the last charge is fired, when they will return to the second position of "*draw pistol.*"

To load without observing the times and motions, the *instructor* will command :



## 1. LOAD AT WILL. 2. LOAD.

Load the *pistol* as prescribed. *Prime* and return to the second position of "*draw pistol*."

When the troopers execute the *manual* well, they will be instructed to come to the position of "*ready*," as follows :

The *instructor* will command :

Ready.

1 time, 1 motion. .

Move the right hand 6 inches to the front, at the same time lowering the muzzle to an angle of *sixty degrees* with the horizon, cock the *pistol* with the right thumb, and return to the second position of "*draw pistol*."

The trooper having been well instructed in the "*manual*" on foot, should be made to repeat it mounted, first at a halt, and afterwards at the different gaits, but the progression in the instruction should be slow. Every trooper should be made to execute all the motions well at each gait before passing to a more rapid one.

Aiming, and especially at rapid gaits, requires some remark. Aiming should be practiced to the right, left, front and rear. In aiming to the right, left or front, at the gallop, or at speed, the trooper should rise a little in the stirrups and incline the body slightly to the front; the arm should be half extended and the body turned in the direction of the object aimed at. In aiming to the rear, the right shoulder should be well thrown back and the right arm extended to its full length.

Firing should, at first, be executed with the greatest care and deliberation. The "*target*" should be 8 feet high and 3 feet wide, with a vertical and a horizontal line,

each an inch wide, intersecting at the height of 5 feet. The vertical line should pass through the centre of the target. The troopers should be formed in front of, facing, and at a distance of 100 paces from the target. The firing should at first be executed at the distance of 10 paces, but the distance should be gradually increased to 40 paces. A peg in front of the target will mark the point from which the trooper is to fire.

To commence the firing, the instructor will cause the trooper on the right to move 5 paces to the front, turn to the right, move 30 paces to the front, turn to the left, move to the front until he arrives abreast of the peg in front of the target, then turn to the left and move to the front until he comes opposite the target, turn toward it, cock the pistol, aim and fire deliberately; then turn to the left, move 30 paces to the front, turn to the left again and pass to the rear of the troop, reload and take his place on the left of the rank. To fire to the right, the trooper executes what he did in firing to the front, except that he does not turn towards the target when he comes in front of it. To fire to the left the instructor causes the trooper on the left to execute, inversely, what the trooper on the right executed in firing to the right. To fire to the rear, the trooper on the right executes what he did in firing to the front, except that he turns from the target instead of towards it, and aims to the rear. The points where the troopers are required to turn in the exercise will be marked by pegs. At first, but one chamber of the pistol should be discharged by each trooper, and great care should be taken to guard against frightening the horses. The troopers should be cautioned to be gentle with them, and soothe them when excited. When a young horse is very timid, he should be accompanied by one which has courage. When the troopers are sufficiently instructed in the exercise, and control their horses well, three or more targets should be used. They should at first be placed on the same line, and 100 paces apart; but the distance should be gradually reduced to 50 paces.

## To load the repeating rifle (or carbine.)

Follow the directions given for the repeating or revolver pistol, with such slight modifications as the difference in size and shape of the weapons will suggest to the instructor.

## To load with powder and ball.

The commands are :

### LOAD IN 5 TIMES.

1. LOAD.
2. HANDLE CARTRIDGE.
3. CHARGE CARTRIDGE.
4. RAM CARTRIDGE.
5. PRIME.

All of which are executed as directed, except that at the second command, the right hand grasps the flask and brings the charger to the chamber ; and at the third command, the powder being introduced, the same hand, letting go the flask, quickly inserts the ball on the powder.

But, in loading the rifle or carbine, the PREVIOUS COMMAND, instead of DRAW PISTOL, is ADVANCE CARBINE OR ADVANCE RIFLE, which is executed as in the *manual of the breech loader*.

## Manual of the breech-loader.

The rifle being suspended at the back, muzzle downward, by the shoulder-strap from left to right. The instructor commands:

### ADVANCE RIFLE.

Seize the rifle at the small of the stock with the right hand; place the butt on the right thigh and across it; the barrel sloping easily forward.

### To load the rifle.

The commands are:

#### LOAD IN 3 TIMES.

- |                      |           |
|----------------------|-----------|
| 1. LOAD.             | 3. PRIME. |
| 2. CHARGE CARTRIDGE. |           |

At the word "LOAD," place the piece quickly in the left hand, which, holding the reins, grasps the gun near and below the band; the muzzle upward and pointing to the left; butt downward, to the right and near the right hip; the right hand seizes the lever; (2d,) opens the breech; (3d,) opens the cartridge-box.

At the command, "CHARGE CARTRIDGE," put the cartridge in the chamber, shut the breech by pressing the lever firmly; then half-cock, brush off the old cap, and open the cap-box; each motion with the right hand and in the order prescribed.

At the word "PRIME," place the cap, press it on the nipple with the right thumb, let the cock gently down, and with the right hand grasp the small of the stock.

## To load the self-priming breech loader.

The commands are :

LOAD IN 2 TIMES.

1. LOAD.            2. CHARGE CARTRIDGE.

Which are executed as above.

If the intention is to fire immediately after loading, the word "READY" is given.

At this command, promptly cock the rifle with the right hand, and place it in the position of ADVANCE RIFLE.

Next, the word

AIM.

At which the piece is leveled, with the butt against the right shoulder; left eye closed, the right cast along the sights; the right fore-finger lightly touching the trigger; the barrel resting on the bridle-hand.

FIRE.

At this word, discharge the piece, but remain at the *position of aim*.

If the intention is to load after firing, the word "LOAD," is given and executed by the times as before, or the command,

LOAD AT WILL.

At this command, the troopers load without the times, or separate commands, and then *advance rifles*.

If the design is *not to reload*, instead of the command LOAD, ADVANCE RIFLES is ordered.

The instructor must not allow the pieces to be held in the position of aim more than a moment before giving the next following command; and, until the horses are accustomed to firing, the pieces should be **ADVANCED** after being discharged, or held at will.

Not intending to fire after aiming, the instructor will order **ADVANCE RIFLE**, (*or recover arms, when dismounted.*)

Intending to handle the sabre or pistol, the command is, **DROP RIFLE**.

At which the trooper lowers the muzzle, butt upward, the piece behind him.

For *inspection of sabre*, see sabre-manual.

### To inspect the revolver-pistol.

The command is:

**INSPECTION OF PISTOL.**

At which the trooper *draws pistol*; (2d,) turns his hand, bringing first the right and then the left side toward the inspector; (3d,) he **RETURNS PISTOL** without farther command.

### To return pistol at the word.

The command is:

**RETURN PISTOL.**

At which it is passed *below* the *reins* into the *saddle-holster*; if the belt or side-holster is meant, it must be named.

## To inspect the breech-loader on horse-back.

The command is :

### INSPECTION OF RIFLE (*or* CARBINE.)

At which the piece is brought to the ADVANCE ; (2d,) turned to exhibit the other side ; and (3d,) DROPPED as directed.

In *preparing to mount or dismount*, the rifle or carbine is passed over the right shoulder, as directed in the articles on that subject.

For further instruction in the mounted rifle exercise, see *Skirmish Drill* in the sequel.

The position of *raise pistol* is that of the second motion of *draw pistol* ; see Manual.

# CAVALRY TACTICS.

---

## PART SECOND.

---

### The Platoon Drill.

The PLATOON is composed of either 12 or 16 files, according to the numbers present.

This requires 24 or 32 troopers in two ranks; 12 or 16 in one rank.

The *right* and *left flank-men* are *corporals*; but, in two ranks, the *rear flank-men* are *privates*.

The *chief of platoon* (lieutenant or sergeant) is posted, when in line, *one pace* (that is, *one yard*) in front of the centre; this is measured from the heads of the front horses to the croup or tail of the horse of the chief.

The *senior sergeant* one pace behind the third file from the right; the *second sergeant* on the right of the corporal of the right flank; this sergeant is *right particular guide*, and *not counted in the fours*; the third sergeant on the left of the left corporal; the third sergeant of a *single platoon* is *counted off*.



But when two, three or four platoons are organized as a squadron, or fraction of a squadron, the left sergeant is *left particular guide*, and *not counted*.

But, in this case, the *first* and *second sergeants* are the *principal guides*; they are posted behind the third file from each flank. The *third* and *fourth sergeants* are the *particular guides* respectively of the right and left.

All non-commissioned officers, excepting the *principal* and *particular guides*, and those commanding platoons, are counted in the fours.

The *rank* and *file*, composed of all except officers, chiefs of platoon and *guides principal* and *particular*, are counted or told off into fours.

On the left of the first and right of the second platoon are sergeants, who are counted, and covered by rear-rank men; when these sergeants are absent, corporals take their places.

The *file-closers* are one yard in rear of the platoon or troop; the *principal guides* are the file-closers of the right and left.

Two platoons are a *division* or company; its chief (like the chief of squadron) is posted, when in line, one yard in front of the centre of his command.

The organization of the division, troop or company, is as follows:

## Posts of Officers and Non-Commissioned Officers of a Company acting singly.

The Captain in front of the centre, one pace distant from the front rank.

The 1st Lieutenant in rear of the centre, in the rank of file-closers.

The 2d Lieutenant commands the first platoon; in the absence of a 3d Lieutenant the 2d platoon is commanded by the senior Sergeant. The chiefs of platoons are posted one pace in front of the centre of their respective platoons.

The 1st Sergeant in rear of the right, in the rank of file-closers.

The 2d and 3d Sergeants on the right and left of the troop, not told off.

A non-commissioned officer is posted on the left of the 1st platoon, and on the right of the 2d.

Corporals, next to the Sergeants who are on the flanks of platoons.

The Saddler and Farrier in rear of the left of the troop 8 paces retired from the line of file-closers; and the Buglers 20 paces in rear of the centre.

## Posts of the Officers and Non-Commissioned Officers of a Squadron in line.

The Captain commanding is posted at the centre of the squadron, the croup of his horse one pace in front of the heads of the horses of the front rank.

The 2d Captain 3 paces in rear of the centre of the squadron. He is charged with the alignment of the rear rank and file-closers.

The senior 1st Lieutenant commands the 1st

platoon, the other 1st Lieutenant commands the 4th platoon.

The senior 2d Lieutenant commands the 2d platoon, the other 2d Lieutenant commands the 3d platoon.

Each of these officers is posted at the centre of his platoon, with the croup of his horse one pace in front of the heads of the horses of the front rank.

The senior Sergeant is posted behind the 3d file from the right of the 1st platoon; he is the principal guide when the column of squadrons is left in front.

The 2d Sergeant behind the 3d file from the left of the 4th platoon; he is principal guide when the column of squadrons is right in front.

The 3d Sergeant is posted on the right of the front rank of the squadron; he is not counted in the rank.

The 4th Sergeant on the left of the front rank; he is not counted in the rank.

The 5th Sergeant on the left of the 1st platoon.

The 6th Sergeant on the right of the 2d platoon.

The 7th Sergeant on the left of the 3d platoon.

The 8th Sergeant on the right of the 4th platoon.

The heads of the horses of all the file-closers are at one pace from the croup of those of the rear rank.

The Corporals are posted in the front rank, on the right and left of their respective platoons, and supply the places of Sergeants when necessary.

When guidons are used, they are carried by the

non-commissioned officers on the left of the 1st and 3d platoons.

The flag of the guidon is swallow-tailed, 3 feet 5 inches from the lance to the end of the swallow-tail; 15 inches to the fork, and 2 feet 3 inches measured on the lance. Half red and half white; the red above. On the red the arms of the State or the initial letters. On the white the letter, number, or name of the company.

The lances of standards and guidons are nine feet long, including spear and ferule.

### The Squadron in column in twos or fours.

The Captains commanding march on the side of the guides, and 4 paces from the flank, and abreast of the centre of their squadrons.

The second Captains march on the side opposite to the guides, 4 paces from the flank, and abreast of the centre of their squadrons.

The 1st Lieutenant of each squadron marches at the head of the 1st platoon, one pace in advance of the first files, having the particular guide of the right on his right.

The chiefs of the other platoons march on the side of the guides, one pace from the flank of the column, and abreast of their first files; the file-closers march on the side opposite to the guide, one pace from the flank, and on a line with the centre of their platoons.

They all march in a similar manner on the flanks of the column when the left is in front; and, in this case, it is the junior 1st Lieutenant who marches in the column at the head of the 4th platoon of each squadron.

The particular guide, who in line is posted on the left of the squadron, marches behind the last files of the squadron; when the column is left in front, he takes post on the left of the officer commanding the 4th platoon, one pace in front of the left file.

When the nature of the ground obliges the officers and file-closers to enter the column, the movement is made successively; the Captains commanding, and the chiefs of platoons, place themselves at the head; the second Captains and the file-closers, in rear of their respective troops.

### Order in column of Platoons.

In this order, the distance from one platoon to another, measured from the men of one front rank to those of another front rank, is equal to the front of a platoon; that is to say, it is 12 paces if the platoons are of twelve files. Subtracting the depth of two ranks, which is 6 paces, there remain 6 paces from the croup of the horses of the rear rank of one platoon, to the heads of the horses of the front rank of the next platoon, a distance which is equal to half of the front of a platoon.

In SINGLE RANK FORMATION, subtracting 3 paces or yards from 12, there remain 9 yards as the distance between platoons from head to croup; or with platoons of 16 troopers, 13 yards.

The Captains commanding march on the side of the guides, four paces from the flank of the col-

umn, and habitually abreast of the centre of their squadrons.

The second Captains march on the side opposite to the guide, 4 paces from the flank of the column, and abreast of the centre of their squadrons.

The 1st and 2d Lieutenants march at the centre of their platoons, one pace from the front rank; other chiefs of platoon in front of centre of platoons; those who command the platoons at the head of squadrons, preserve, besides their distance, the ground necessary to enable each squadron, in wheeling into line, to maintain its interval.

The Sergeants, who are file-closers, march on the side opposite to the guides, behind the third file of their platoons.

When the column marches right in front, the particular guide of the right of each squadron marches on the right of the 1st platoon; and the particular guide on the left places himself as file-closer behind the 2d file from the left of the 4th platoon.

The post of these Sergeants is the reverse when the left is in front.

The squadron being composed of 64 files, when it is broken into sections, the 1st Lieutenant of each squadron marches at the head of the 1st section of the 1st platoon; the chiefs of the other platoons remain on the side of the guides, one pace from and on a line with the front rank of their 1st section.

The file-closers who command the 2d sections, march on the side opposite to the guides, one pace from and on a line with the front rank.

The posts of the commandants of sections is the reverse when the left is in front.

### Column of divisions (or companies.)

The Captains are posted as in column of platoons.

The senior 1st Lieutenant commands the 1st division, the other 1st Lieutenant the 2d; they remain, however, at the centre of their platoons.

All the other officers and Sergeants of each division are posted as prescribed in the order in column of platoons, the file-closers remaining in their places, on whatsoever side the guide may be.

There being a sufficient number of officers and troopers present, they may be formed as a division or squadron, and the various posts taken as directed; but before attempting the drill of the squadron, that of the platoon must be well understood. If competent officers can be found for the purpose, each Instructor and assistant should be limited to 12 or 16 men. But this not being always possible, 2 or more platoons may be instructed by ONE OFFICER and ONE ASSISTANT, the whole for the present forming *one single platoon*. The other officers may remain at the posts assigned them, or, for the time being, ride in the rank of file-closers.

The drill-call being sounded, the horses are conducted to the drill-ground, as directed in the first lesson, none being mounted but the instructor and assistant. The former commands:

ATTENTION!  
IN TWO RANKS,  
FORM PLATOON.

To form *company* or *squadron*, those words will be substituted for "*platoon*." To form in one rank, *one rank* will be named instead of *two*.

At the last command, the flank Sergeants (guides of the right and left) will take post at the flanks of the proposed line; the 1st Corporal on the left of the right guide; the 2d Corporal on the right of the left guide; the tallest trooper (man and horse considered) will take his place on the left of the 1st Corporal, and the lowest on the right of the 2d Corporal; the next tallest will cover the 1st Corporal, and the next lowest the 2d Corporal; these latter being of the rear rank, will form *six yards* behind the Corporals.

Thus the platoon will be formed with the tallest on the right.

The file-closers are *six yards* in rear, posted as directed; the assistant instructor ten yards in front of centre, facing the platoon.

The instructor, posted where his presence is most wanted, commands:

1. ATTENTION.

3 FRONT.

2. *Right*—DRESS.

He then commands:

*In each rank*—COUNT (BY) FOURS.

At the last part of the command, which is FOURS, the men count in each rank, from right to left, pronouncing in a loud and distinct voice, in the same tone, without hurry, and without turning the head; *one, two, three, four*, according to the place which each one occupies.

The troopers then mount by the *times*, and without explanation.

At the command *form*—RANKS, the assistant-instructor moves forward, turns to the right-about, and places himself at the centre of the platoon, the croup of his horse one pace from the head of the



horses of the front rank. The file-closers follow the rear rank.

### General principles of alignment.

The troopers, to align themselves, should regulate their shoulders upon those of the men on the side of the alignment, and fix the eyes upon the line of the eyes, so as to perceive the breast of the the second trooper of their rank on the side of the alignment; for this purpose, they should turn the head, remaining square upon their horses, feel lightly the boot of the man on the side of the alignment, and keep the horses straight in the ranks that all may have a parallel direction.

The troopers of the rear rank, independently of the alignment, should be exactly behind their file-leaders, and in the same direction, taking care to preserve the distance of 2 feet from head to croup.

### Successive alignment of files in the platoon.

The two files of the right or of the left are moved forward 10 paces, and aligned parallel to the platoon by the commands: 1. *Two files from right (or left) forward*; 2. MARCH; 3. HALT; 4. *Right (or left)—DRESS*; 5. FRONT. The instructor then commands:

1. *By file right (or left)—DRESS.*
2. FRONT.

At the last part of the first command, which is DRESS, each file moves forward successively and steadily, the troopers turning the head to the right,

and taking the last steps slowly, in order to arrive abreast of the files already formed without passing beyond the alignment, observing then to halt, give the hand, relax the legs, and keep the head to the right until the command FRONT.

Each file executes the same movement when the preceding one has arrived on the base of alignment, so that only one file may align itself at the same time.

At the command FRONT, turn the head to the front.

The instructor gives the command FRONT when the last file is aligned.

When the troopers execute correctly these alignments, this instruction is repeated in giving the two files of the right an oblique direction. For this purpose, the two files having marched forward 4 paces, as has been prescribed, execute a *half-turn to the right*, or *the left*, and march 6 paces in this new direction.

The platoon being unmasked, the remainder of the movement is executed by the commands and following the principles prescribed; each file, as it arrives nearly opposite the place it is to occupy, executes a *half-turn to the right*, or *to the left*, so that having left the platoon by one straight line, it arrives upon the new alignment by another.

The two files of the right, or of the left, are made to rein-back 4 paces, and align themselves parallel to the platoon and opposite the place they occupied in it, by the commands: 1. *Two files from the right (or left) backwards*; 2. MARCH; 3. HALT; 4. *Right (or left)—DRESS*; 5. FRONT. The instructor then commands:

1. *By file—right (or left) backwards—DRESS.*
2. FRONT.

At the last part of the first command, which is DRESS, each file reins back successively, keeping perfectly straight, the troopers turning the head to the right, and passing a little to the rear of the files already formed, in order to come up abreast of them by a movement to the front, which renders the alignment more easy.

The troopers of the front rank rein back slowly, those of the rear rank regulate themselves upon the file-leaders, preserving always their proper distance.

At the command FRONT, turn the head to the front.

The alignment to the rear gives the means of repairing a fault by returning to the alignment when it has been passed over; but it should be avoided as much as possible.

The alignment is then executed by twos (or by fours.) For this purpose, the two or four files of the right move forward as has been prescribed, and the instructor commands:

1. *By twos (or by fours) right (or left)*—DRESS.
2. FRONT.

At the last part of the first command, which is DRESS, the files align themselves successively by twos (or by fours), following the principles prescribed for the alignment by file, being particular to set out and arrive upon the alignment together.

At the command FRONT, turn the head to the front.

The instructor observes that the troopers align themselves on the breast of the second man towards the side

of the alignment, and not upon the extremity of the rank (which would prevent their remaining square in their seats); that they are neither too much opened nor closed; and, finally, that those of the rear rank are exactly behind their file-leaders. The troopers are also required to align themselves promptly, that the horses may not be kept a long time *gathered*.

When a platoon is not aligned, it arises from the fact, generally, that the horses are not straight in the ranks.

When a platoon dresses to the right, if the left wing is in rear, it is presumed that most of the horses are turned to the left; it is necessary to observe if this is the case, and to command the troopers to carry the hand slightly to the right, at the same time closing the right leg, which brings the horse upon the alignment.

If, after this movement, some of the troopers are still too much in rear to perceive the line of the rank, they move forward after squaring their horses.

When a platoon dresses to the right, if the left wing is in advance, it is presumed that the horses are turned to the right: the troopers are then required to carry the hand to the left, closing at the same time the left leg, which causes the horse to step back to his proper place.

If, after this movement, some troopers are still in advance, they rein directly back until they can perceive only the line of the rank.

In dressing to the left, the same faults are corrected by inverse means.

During the alignment, the instructor places himself in front of the troopers, to be assured that they execute the movement steadily, and do not turn the head more than is prescribed; that they do not open the knee in order to feel the boot; that they prevent their horses from crowding the troopers already formed; that they take the last steps slowly; that they align themselves without losing time as they arrive; and that they give the hand and replace the legs immediately after being aligned.

For this exercise alone, the assistant instructor is

placed perpendicularly to the flank of the platoon, facing to the left, if the alignment is to the right, and facing to the right, if the alignment is to the left. He observes that the troopers halt on the same line, and rectifies the alignment in a low voice. At the command FRONT, he resumes his place before the platoon.

The instructor insists upon all these principles; but the alignments will be occasionally interrupted by marches in column, in order to calm the horses.

### Alignment of the platoon.

The platoon being in line, the instructor places the corporal of the flank on which he wishes to align it in such a position that no trooper will be forced to rein back, and commands:

1. *Right (or left)*—DRESS.
2. FRONT.

At the last part of the first command, which is DRESS, all the troopers align themselves promptly, but with steadiness.

At the command FRONT, turn the head to the front.

In all the alignments, the corporal of the opposite flank aligns himself promptly on the one towards the side of the alignment, without respect to the individual alignment of the troopers.

### To open and close the ranks.

To open the ranks, the instructor commands:

1. *Rear rank open order.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Right*—DRESS.
4. FRONT.

At the command MARCH, the front rank remains immoveable, the rear rank reins-back 6 paces, each trooper preserving the direction of his file-leader. The file-closer reins back until he is 6 paces from the rear rank. The assistant instructor moves forward 6 paces, and faces the platoon by a *turn-about to the left*.

At the command *right*—DRESS, the rear rank dresses to the right.

At the command FRONT, turn the head to the front.

To close the rank, the instructor commands :

- |                                  |                         |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. <i>Rear rank close order.</i> | 3. <i>Right</i> —DRESS. |
| 2. MARCH.                        | 4. FRONT.               |

At the command MARCH, the rear rank closes upon the front to the distance of 2 feet, each trooper taking care to preserve the direction of his file-leader. The assistant instructor resumes his place at the centre of the platoon by a *turn-about to the right*, and the file-closer takes his proper distance from the rear rank.

At the command *right*—DRESS, the platoon is aligned to the right.

At the command FRONT, turn the head to the front.

### To rein-back the platoon.

The platoon being halted, the instructor commands :

1. *Platoon backwards.*
2. *Guide right (or left.)*
3. MARCH.

At the command march, all the troopers rein-back at once, regulating their movements by those of the guide.

When the platoon has reined back some steps, the instructor commands:

- |                    |                                   |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Platoon.</i> | 3. <i>Right (or left)</i> —DRESS. |
| 2. HALT.           | 4. FRONT.                         |

### To break the platoon by file.

The platoon being in line, the instructor commands:

- |                    |           |
|--------------------|-----------|
| 1. <i>By file.</i> | 2. MARCH. |
|--------------------|-----------|

At the command *by file*, the troopers of the first file *gather* their horses, and the others successively, as soon as the file on the right is in motion.

At the command MARCH, the first file of the right moves straight to the front; it is followed by the other file; each file moves off when the haunches of the rear rank horse of the file which has broken, arrives at the head of the horses of the front rank; each file marches 6 paces straight to the front, makes a *quarter-turn to the right*, and marches in the new direction until it reaches its place in the column, when it makes a *quarter-turn to the left*.

The instructor observes that the troopers gather their horses and break successively, only at the moment prescribed; that the first file moves straight to the front; that the other files never march less than six paces before obliquing, and do not make more than a *quarter-turn to the right or to the left*, in order to rejoin the column.

To break the platoon by the left, the movement is executed following the same principles, but by inverse means, at the commands :

1. *By files from the left.*
2. MARCH.

### Direct march in column by file.

The troopers should keep their horses straight, and march at a free and equal gait; they should keep their eyes to the front, and continue in the direction of the column, so as to perceive only the trooper who marches before them, to march at the same gait with him, preserving always the distance of two feet from head to croup, that his own horse may not tread upon the heels of the horse in front. The distance should be recovered gradually when lost.

The greater the depth of the column, the more attention should the instructor pay to the equality of the gaits, and the preservation of the distances.

### Change of direction.

To change the direction, the instructor commands :

*Head of column*—RIGHT (OR LEFT.)

At which the assistant instructor orders :

*Right (or, left)*—TURN.

At the word TURN, the leading file turns to the left, (or right,) over an arc, or circular path of three yards, in a direction perpendicular to the original one. All turn in succession at the same point.



## To halt, and to commence the march in column.

The column marching, to halt it the instructor commands :

1. *Column.*
2. HALT.

At the command HALT, the troopers stop together in the direction of their file-leaders and at their distances, taking care to prevent their horses from stepping back.

To move off, the instructor commands :

1. *Column forward.*
2. MARCH.

At the command MARCH, the troopers move off steadily together.

The column being at a halt, if the instructor wishes it to commence the move *at a trot*, he commands :

*Column forward, trot*—MARCH.

The order may then be given either to WALK, or the halt may be ordered.

## Individual oblique march.

The column marching by file, the instructor commands :

1. *Left (or right) oblique.*
2. MARCH.

At the command MARCH, each trooper executes a *quarter-turn to the left*, and moves forward in his new direction, all following parallel lines, and regu-

lating themselves towards the right, in order to keep on the same line, and to preserve their distances on that side.

To return to the primitive direction, the instructor commands:

### FORWARD.

At this command, the troopers return to the original direction, by a *quarter-turn to the right*, in advancing, and move forward in the direction of their file-leaders.

The platoon marching in column by file, to form it to the front, to the left, or on right, into line.

The column marching right in front, to form it to the front into line, the instructor commands:

- |                            |                        |
|----------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. <i>Front into line.</i> | 4. <i>Right—DRESS.</i> |
| 2. MARCH.                  | 5. FRONT.              |
| 3. HALT.                   |                        |

At the command MARCH, the first file continues to march straight forward. The others oblique immediately to the left, march in this new direction, and each file makes a *quarter-turn to the right* on coming opposite the place he is to occupy in the platoon.

When the first file has marched 20 paces,\* the instructor commands HALT. At this command, it

---

\* This is increased to 30 paces (yards) in the squadron drill; it is often much diminished, especially when obstacles interfere.

halts square to the front; the other files come up and form successively on the left of the first, and dress to the right.

At the command FRONT, turn the head to the front.

The instructor gives the command *right*—DRESS, immediately after HALT, and commands FRONT when the last file is aligned.

The column marching left in front, the movement is executed following the same principles, but by inverse means, at the commands: *Front into line*; 2. MARCH; 3. HALT; 4. *Left*—DRESS; 5. FRONT.

The column marching right in front, to form it into line upon its left flank, the instructor commands:

- |                            |                         |
|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. <i>Left into line</i> . | 4. <i>Right</i> —DRESS. |
| 2. MARCH.                  | 5. FRONT.               |
| 3. HALT.                   |                         |

At the command MARCH, the first file turns to the left and moves straight forward; the other files continue to march on, and at 2 paces before arriving opposite the place they are to occupy in the platoon, they turn successively to the left.

When the first file has marched 20 paces, the instructor commands HALT. At this command it halts; the other files come up and form successively on the left of the first, and dress to the right.

At the command front, turn the head to the front.

The instructor gives the command *right*—DRESS, immediately after HALT, and commands FRONT when the last file is aligned.

He observes that the troopers turn exactly upon the point indicated, and before arriving at it do not incline to the side of the formation.

The column marching left in front, to form in line on the right flank, the movement is executed, following the same principles, but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Right into line*; 2. MARCH; 3. HALT; 4. *Left—DRESS*; 5. FRONT.

When necessary, the front may be made to the left or right in less time and space, by the commands, FRONT, HALT.

The column marching right in front, to form in line upon the prolongation and in advance of its right flank, the instructor commands:

- |                               |                        |
|-------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. <i>On right into line.</i> | 4. <i>Right—DRESS.</i> |
| 2. MARCH.                     | 5. FRONT.              |
| 3. HALT.                      |                        |

At the command MARCH, the first file turns to the right and moves straight forward; the other files continue to march on, and each turns successively to the right, at one pace beyond the point where the one preceding turned.

When the first file has marched 20 paces, the instructor commands HALT. At this command it halts; the other files come up and form successively on the left of the first, and dress to the right.

At the command FRONT, turn the head to the front.

The instructor gives the command *right—DRESS*, immediately after HALT, and commands FRONT when the last file is aligned.

The column marching left in front, to form in line upon the prolongation and in advance of its left flank the movement is executed, following the same principles, but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *On left into line*; 2. MARCH; 3. HALT; 4. *Left—DRESS*; 5. FRONT.

In ordering "*On right* (or on left) *into line*, strong emphasis is laid on the word **ON**, to prevent the men from mistaking this for the previous movement.

## To break the platoon by twos or by fours.

The platoon being in line, the instructor commands :

1. *By twos* (or *by fours*.)
2. **MARCH.**
3. *Guide left.*

At the command **MARCH**, the first two or four files of the right move straight to the front ; they are followed by the other files, who move off when the haunches of the horse of the rear rank are on a line with the heads of the horses of the front rank. These files march straight forward 6 paces, execute a *quarter turn to the right* by trooper, and march in this direction until they meet the column, when they take their places in it by making a *quarter turn to the left*.

The command *guide left*, is given immediately after that of **MARCH**, that the trooper on the left of the front rank of twos or fours, who becomes guide of the column, may take at once a point of direction.

After breaking by twos, No. *two* and *four* being guides, keep their eyes to the front. After reaching the column, Nos. *one* and *three* dress upon them.

After breaking by fours, Nos. *four* become guides of each rank.

To break the platoon by the left, the movement is executed, following the same principles, but by inverse means, at the commands: *by twos from the left* (or *by fours*;) 2. **MARCH**; 3. *Guide right*.

## Direct march in column by twos or by fours.

The principles of the direct march in column by file, are applicable to the column by twos or by fours.

The trooper on the left of the first rank of twos (or fours) is guide of the column; he keeps his eyes to the front, moves straight forward, and marches so that the troopers of his rank may be at 1 pace from the croup of the sub-instructor's horse. The trooper on the left of each of the other ranks, who is guide of his rank, preserves the head direct, and keeps at the distance of 2 feet from his file-leader, and in the same direction; the other troopers of each rank look occasionally towards the guide, in order to align themselves and regulate upon him their rate of march. They feel lightly the boot towards that side, and yield to all pressure coming from it. When the march is by fours, they resist all pressure coming from the opposite direction.

When the platoon marches left in front, the guide is to the right, and in other respects the troopers conform to the same principles.

### Change of direction.

The column marching by twos or by fours, right or left in front, the instructor commands:

*Head of column to the left (or to the right).*

At this command the assistant-instructor commands:

1. *Left*—TURN.

## 2. FORWARD.

At the first part of the first command, which is *left*, the left trooper, who is pivot, prepares to turn at the same gait, the trooper of the opposite side to increase his. The walk is accelerated, but the trot is avoided, if possible, until ordered.

At the last part of the command, which is TURN, the first rank of twos or fours turns to the left. The pivot turns at the same gait, describing an *arc of a circle of five paces*. The trooper on the opposite side turns, increasing the gait; the other troopers turn the head towards the marching flank, to regulate their rate of march, feeling at the same time lightly the boot on the side of the pivot.

At the command FORWARD, the troopers who had increased the gait resume the precise pace at which they were before moving, and the head of the column marches straight forward in the new direction.

Each rank executes the same movement on arriving upon the ground where the first has turned.

The assistant-instructor should give the command *left* in sufficient time to command TURN, when he is at *three paces* from the point indicated for the change of direction; he executes his movement, lengthening slightly the gait, without leaving the centre of the front rank, regulating himself upon the marching flank, so as to give the command FORWARD at the instant the front rank, having executed a quarter of a wheel, is in a direction perpendicular to the former one.

When the changes of direction are to be executed at the angles of a limited ground, and the column is marching by fours, the assistant-instructor commands: 1. *Left* (or

*right*)—TURN; 2. FORWARD, without waiting for the command *Head of column to the left* (or *to the right*.)

The column marching by twos or by fours, the instructor halts it, as prescribed.

To commence the march, the instructor commands:

1. *Column forward.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide left.*

The column marching by twos or by fours, the instructor commands:

1. *Left* (or *right*) *oblique.*
2. MARCH.

At the command MARCH, each trooper executes a *quarter-turn to the left*.

The trooper on the left of the first rank, who is guide of the column, moves straight forward in the new direction, and parallel to the assistant-instructor. The trooper on the left of each of the other ranks, who is guide of his rank, moves forward also in the new direction, observing the guide of the column so as to keep on the same line, and in a parallel direction with him.

The other troopers move forward, looking occasionally to the left so as to align themselves upon their guide. Each one places the left knee behind the right knee of the man on the left, and the head of his horse opposite the lower part of the neck of the horse on his left. The troopers march thus, in each rank, during the oblique march.

To return to the primitive direction, conform to what is prescribed, for the column by files.



If the troopers become disunited during the oblique march, they should rejoin the guide of their rank, gaining more ground to the front than to the side, so as not to lose their alignment nor retard those who march behind them. If the guide of any rank ceases to be on the line of the guide of the column, he lengthens or shortens the pace, without changing the direction in order to recover his place.

To rectify the distances, the degrees of obliquity, and to be assured that the guides, as well as the other troopers, are in the same direction, the instructor halts the column at the commands: 1. *Column*; 2. HALT. The column is put again in motion in the oblique direction at the commands: 1. *Column forward*; 2. MARCH.

The platoon marching in column by twos or by fours, to form it to the front, to the left, or on right, into line.

The platoon marching in column right in front, to form line to the front, the instructor commands:

- |                            |                         |
|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. <i>Front into line.</i> | 4. <i>Right</i> —DRESS. |
| 2. MARCH.                  | 5. FRONT.               |
| 3. HALT.                   |                         |

At the command MARCH, the two (or four) first files continue to march forward; the other ranks of twos (or fours) oblique to the left, march in this direction, and make a *quarter-turn to the right* on coming opposite the place they are to occupy in the platoon.

When the first files have marched 20 paces, the instructor commands HALT. At this command, they halt square to the front; the other files come

up and form successively on their left, and dress to the right.

At the command **FRONT**, turn the head to the front.

The instructor gives the command *right*—**DRESS** immediately after that of **HALT**, and commands **FRONT** when the last rank of twos or fours is aligned.

The column marching left in front, the movement is executed following the same principles, but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Front into line*; 2. **MARCH**; 3. **HALT**; 4. *Left*—**DRESS**; 5. **FRONT**.

The column marching right in front, to form line upon its left flank, the instructor commands:

- |                            |                                  |
|----------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Left into line</i> . | 4. <i>Right</i> — <b>DRESS</b> . |
| 2. <b>MARCH</b> .          | 5. <b>FRONT</b> .                |
| 3. <b>HALT</b> .           |                                  |

At the command **MARCH**, the two (or four) first files turn to the left and move straight forward; the other ranks of twos (or fours) continue to march on, and at 3 paces before arriving opposite the place they are to occupy in the platoon, turn successively to the left.

When the first files have marched 20 paces, the instructor commands, **HALT**. At this command, the first files halt; the others come up and form successively on their left, and dress to the right.

At the command **FRONT**, turn the head to the front.

The instructor gives the command *right*—**DRESS**, immediately after that of **HALT**, and commands **FRONT** when the two (or four) last files are aligned.

The column marching left in front, to form line upon its right flank, the movement is executed following the

same principles, but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Right into line*; 2. MARCH; 3. HALT; 4. *Left—DRESS*; 5. FRONT.

The column marching right in front, to form line upon the prolongation, and in advance of its right flank, the instructor commands:

- |                              |                        |
|------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. <i>On right into line</i> | 4. <i>Right—DRESS.</i> |
| 2. MARCH.                    | 5. FRONT.              |
| 3. HALT.                     |                        |

At the command MARCH, the two (or four) first files turn to the right and move straight forward; the other ranks of twos (or fours) continue to march on, and each turns successively to the right, at 3 paces beyond the point where the preceding rank has turned.

When the first files have marched 20 paces, the instructor commands, HALT. At this command, the first files halt square upon the line; the other files come up and form successively on their left, and dress to the right.

At the command FRONT, turn the head to the front.

The instructor gives the command *right—DRESS*, immediately after that of HALT, and commands FRONT when the two (or four) last files are aligned.

The column marching left in front, to form line upon the prolongation and in advance of its left flank, the movement is executed following the same principles, but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *On left into line*; 2. MARCH; 3. HALT; 4. *Left—DRESS*; 5. MARCH.

The foregoing explanations have been given for movements twos or by fours, in order to avoid repetition; but they are executed by fours only after obtaining the necessary precision in the exercises by twos. When these

movements have been executed with regularity *at the walk*, they are repeated *at the trot* and *at the gallop*.

## To form the platoon to the left in one rank.

The platoon being formed in two ranks, the instructor commands:

- |                                  |                        |
|----------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. <i>Left into single rank.</i> | 4. HALT.               |
| 2. MARCH.                        | 5. <i>Right—DRESS.</i> |
| 3. FRONT                         | 6. FRONT.              |

At the command MARCH, the front rank moves forward 6 paces, dressing by the right; the trooper on the left of the rear rank *turns to the left* and moves forward; he is followed by all the other troopers of that rank, who execute successively the same movement.

At the command FRONT, the trooper on the left of the rear rank *turns to the right*, and the other troopers successively, when they have arrived nearly opposite the places they are to occupy in the rank.

At the command HALT, the trooper on the left halts, and successively the others, on arriving abreast of him.

At the command *Right—DRESS*, all the troopers of the rear rank dress to the right.

At the 6th command, which is FRONT, turn the head to the front.

The instructor gives the 3d command, which is FRONT, the moment that one-third of the rear rank in column have passed the front rank; he commands *right—DRESS*, when the trooper on the right of the rear rank has fronted.

## Manual of arms.

The platoon being in one rank, the troopers execute at a halt the manual of arms.

## To form the platoon to the right in two ranks.

The platoon being in one rank, the instructor designates the trooper who is to be on the left of the front rank, also the one to be on the right of the rear rank, and commands :

- |                                 |                        |
|---------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. <i>Right into two ranks.</i> | 3. <i>Right—DRESS.</i> |
| 2. MARCH.                       | 4. FRONT.              |

At the command MARCH, the front rank moves forward 6 paces, dressing by the right ; the trooper on the right of the rear rank *turns to the right* as soon as the front rank has passed, and moves forward obliquing to the right ; when he is nearly in rear of the trooper on the right of the front rank, he fronts by *turning to the left*. All the other troopers execute successively the same movement, placing themselves exactly behind their file-leaders, and at their proper distances.

At the command *right—DRESS*, all the troopers align themselves to the right.

At the command FRONT, turn the head to the front.

The instructor gives the command *right—DRESS*, when the trooper on the right of the rear rank has turned to the front.

The exercise being finished, the troopers are ordered to dismount and file off.

At the command PREPARE TO DISMOUNT, the assistant instructor moves 12 paces to the front, and faces the platoon by a turn-about to the left; at the same command the file-closer reins back 4 paces, and dismounts with the platoon.

## To form twos and fours at the same gait.

The platoon marching in column by file, right in front, to form twos, the instructor commands :

1. *Form twos.*

2. MARCH.

At the command MARCH, the first file continues to march on, and halts when it has marched 10 paces; the second file obliquates to the left, and comes up abreast of the first; on arriving there, it halts and dresses to the right. All the other files continue to march straight forward, Nos. 2 and 4 executing their movement in the same manner, but successively, and when Nos. 1 and 3, upon which they should form, have nearly arrived at their proper distances, and are about to halt.

The platoon marching in column by twos, right in front, to form fours, the instructor commands :

1. *Form fours.*

2. MARCH.

At the command MARCH, the two first files continue to march on, and halt when they have marched 10 paces; the two following files oblique to the left, and come up abreast of the two first;

on arriving there, they halt and dress to the right. All the other files continue to march straight forward, Nos. 3 and 4 executing their movement in the same manner, but successively, and when Nos. 1 and 2, upon which they should form, have nearly arrived at their proper distance and are about to halt.

When the column is *at a trot*, the formation of twos and fours at the same gait is executed following the same principles. The first, or two first files, pass *to the walk*, at the command MARCH; the others continue to march *at the trot*, until they have arrived abreast of those on which they should form; then they pass *to the walk*.

When the column is *at a gallop*, the movement is executed following the same principles. The first, or two first files pass *to the trot* at the command MARCH; the others continue to march *at the gallop*, until they have executed their formation; then they pass *to the trot*.

When twos or fours are formed *at the trot* or *at the gallop*, the guide is announced as soon as the first files have doubled. In executing the same movements *at a walk*, as the head of the column halts, the guide is not announced.

The column marching left in front, these movements are executed following the same principles and by inverse means.

## To break by twos and by file at the same gait.

The platoon marching in column by fours, right in front, to break by twos, the instructor commands:

1. *By twos.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide left.*

At the command *by twos*, all the troopers prepare to halt, except Nos. 1 and 2 of the leading files.

At the command MARCH, Nos. 1 and 2 of the leading files continue to march at the same gait; all the others halt. Files 3 and 4 of the leading rank oblique to the right the moment they are passed by the croup of the horses of the rear rank of Nos. 1 and 2, and place themselves in column behind them.

Each rank of fours executes successively the same movement, files 1 and 2 breaking as soon as files 3 and 4 of the rank which precedes them have commenced obliquing, in order to enter the column.

Files 1 and 2, which break to the front, regulate their gate, so as to preserve their distances; and files 3 and 4 keep their horses straight, so as not to constrain the movements of files 1 and 2.

The platoon marching in column by twos, right in front, to break by file, the instructor commands:

1. *By file.*

2. MARCH.

At the command *by file*, all the troopers prepare to halt except the right file of the leading rank of twos.

At the command MARCH, the right file of the leading rank of twos continues to march at the same gait, all the others halt. The left file of this same rank obliquates to the right the moment it is passed by the croup of the rear rank horse of No. 1, and places itself in column behind the first file.

Each rank of twos executes successively the same movement, files 1 and 3 breaking as soon as files 2 and 4 who precede them have commenced obliquing in order to enter the column.



Files 1 and 3, which break to the front, regulate their gait so as to have their distances. Files 2 and 4 keep their horses straight, so as not to constrain the movements of files 1 and 3.

When the column is *at the trot*, to break by twos or by file is executed on the same principles; the right files of the leading rank continue *at the trot*; all the others take *the walk* at the command MARCH, and resume *the trot* in order to enter the column; when the column is at *the gallop*, the files which are to break take *the trot* at the command MARCH, and afterwards resume *the gallop* on entering the column.

The instructor observes that the files which break, halt, change gait, and put themselves again in motion, with steadiness; that they keep their horses straight, so as not to retard the movements of those which only march forward, and that they retake successively their distances, their directions and their original gait.

The column marching left in front, the movement is executed, following the same principles, but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *By twos (or by file) from the left*; 2. MARCH. If the column marches by twos, the guide is indicated to the right, immediately after the command MARCH.

## To form twos and fours, doubling the gait.

The platoons marching in column by file, right in front, to form twos the instructor commands:

1. *Form twos—trot.*
2. MARCH.
- 3 *Guide left*

At the command *form twos—trot*, all the troopers prepare to take *the trot*, except the leading file.

At the command MARCH, all the troopers take *the trot*, except the leading file; the second file

obliques to the left, and comes up abreast of the first; on arriving there it takes *the walk*; all the other files continue to march forward *at the trot*. Files 4 and 2 execute their movement in the same manner, but successively, when 3 and 1, upon whom they are to form, have nearly arrived at their distance, and are about to pass to *the walk*.

The platoon marching in column by twos, right in front, to form fours the instructor commands:

1. *Form fours—trot.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide left.*

At the command *form fours—trot*, all the troopers prepare to take the trot, except the two leading files.

At the command MARCH, all the troopers take *the trot*, except the two leading files; the two following files oblique to the left, and come up abreast of the two first; on arriving there they resume *the walk*; all the other files continue to march forward *at the trot*. Files 3 and 4 execute their movement in the same manner, but successively, when files 1 and 2, upon whom they are to form, have nearly arrived at their distance, and are about to pass to *the walk*.

When the column is at *the trot*, the movement is executed on the same principles. At the command MARCH, all the troopers pass to *the gallop*, except the files at the head of the column, and resume the *trot* when their formation is executed.

When the column is *at the gallop*, the movement to form twos or fours is always executed at the same gait.

The column marching left in front, the movement is executed, following the same principles, but by inverse means, at the commands; 1. *Form twos (or form fours)—trot*; 2. MARCH; 3. *Guide right*.

The instructor observes that the first file to oblique does so immediately after the command MARCH; that the gait is doubled with moderation: that the formation extends itself successively from the head to the rear of the column, the files who march straight forward keeping their horses well in hand to prevent their following those which oblique; he observes also that the files which oblique do so a little before arriving at their distance particularly in marching by fours; and that they never pass beyond the alignment of those on whom they are to form.

## To break by twos and by file doubling the gait.

The platoon marching in column by fours, the instructor commands:

1. *By twos—trot.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide left.*

At the command *by twos—trot*, files 1 and 2 of the leading rank of fours prepare to *trot*.

At the command MARCH, they commence *the trot*; all the other files continue to march *at the walk*; files 3 and 4 take *the trot* successively and oblique to the right, in order to place themselves in column behind files 1 and 2.

The movement being terminated, the instructor orders, *the walk*.

The platoon marching in column by twos, right in front, to break by file the instructor commands:

1. *By file—trot.*
2. MARCH.

At the command *by file—trot*, the right file of the leading rank of twos prepares to *trot*.

At the command MARCH, it commences *the trot* ; all the other files continue to march *at the walk* ; files 2 and 4 assume the trot successively and oblique to the right, in order to place themselves behind files 1 and 3 in the column.

When the column is *at the trot*, to break doubling the gait, the instructor commands : 1. *By twos (or by file)—gallop* ; 2 MARCH ; which is executed on the same principles.

When the column is *at the gallop*, the movement to break by twos or by file is executed at the same gait.

In these movements, the instructor observes that the head of the column changes gait with moderation, and that the troopers who follow do not permit their horses to move off before the moment prescribed.

The column marching left in front, the movement is executed, following the same principles, but by inverse means, at the commands : 1. *By twos (or by file) from the left—trot* ; 2. MARCH. If the column is to march by twos, the guide is indicated to the right, immediately after the command MARCH.

As it is important for the precision and regularity of these movements that the troopers should not forget their numbers, the instructor should assure himself of it from time to time.

## Direct march of the platoon in line.

The principles of the direct march give the troopers the means,

1st. Of preserving the alignments in marching, without being disunited.

2d. Of not closing too much, and of recovering the required distances when they have closed.

3d. Of not opening, and of closing upon each other again when they have opened.

4th. Of not throwing the guide out of his direction, and of permitting him to return to it if he has been forced out.

The most important point in the *direct march* being to keep the horses straight in the ranks, it is indispensable that the troopers should preserve the head direct.

To keep themselves aligned, the troopers should feel lightly the boot of the men on the side of the guide, and march at an equal gait.

The troopers should yield to all pressure coming from the side of the guide, and resist that coming from the opposite side.

The guide should always march at a free and steady gait, and change it with steadiness in order to avoid irregularity in the ranks.

If the troopers are in front or in rear of the alignment, too near to or too far from the man on the side of the guide, they move from or approach him gradually, and in gaining ground to the front.

When the guide feels himself thrown out of his direction, he extends his arm to the front to indicate that there is too much pressure towards him, the troopers give a glance to the guide, relieve him and straighten their horses as soon as he is relieved.

The corporal of the flank opposite to the guide, is not required to preserve the head direct. He aligns himself upon the guide and the general front of the platoon.

The guide is commanded alternately to the right and to the left, that the troopers may have the habit of dressing equally towards either direction.

When the platoon is halted, the alignment is ordered towards the side of the guide.

When the instructor wishes to exercise the platoon at the direct march, it is conducted to the extremity of a ground of sufficient extent to admit of its marching some time without changing the direction.

The platoon being in line, the instructor commands :

1. *Open files to the left* (or to the *right*.)
2. MARCH.
3. *Right* (or *left*)—DRESS.
4. FRONT.

At the command MARCH, all the troopers, except the right file, passage to the left, as prescribed, the second trooper straightens his horse and halts as soon as he has gained an interval of 1 pace between himself and the trooper of the right.

Each of the other troopers executes the same movement, regulating the interval by the trooper on his right.

The troopers of the rear rank follow their file-leaders, and keep at their proper distances.

The instructor orders the alignment the moment the second trooper from the right has attained his interval.

The troopers being aligned, the instructor indicates to the guide of the right, or of the left, a fixed point in a direction perpendicular to the front of the platoon; he instructs him to take an intermediate point, never to lose sight of these two points, in order to keep himself always in the proper direction, and to select a more distant point as he approaches the one nearest to him.

To give a point of direction, the instructor places himself exactly behind the right file, or the left file, and indicates to the trooper of the front rank an object on the ground which is immovable and can be distinctly seen, such as a house, a steeple, a mill, a tree; the trooper of the rear rank keeps himself always in file and at his

proper distance, so that the front rank man will conceal from him the point of direction indicated.

To march the platoon forward, the instructor commands :

1. *Platoon forward,*
2. *Guide right (or left.)*
3. MARCH.

At the command MARCH, all the troopers move straight forward, at the same gait with the men on the side of the guide.

As the troopers are not boot to boot, they should give a glance from time to time towards the guide.

During the march the instructor is sometimes at the side of the guide, to assure himself that the troopers march on the same line; and sometimes behind the guide, to observe that he follows the direction indicated.

To halt the platoon, the instructor commands :

- |                    |                                  |
|--------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Platoon.</i> | 3. <i>Right (or Left)—DRESS.</i> |
| 2. HALT.           | 4. FRONT.                        |

At the command HALT, the troopers stop.

At the command *right*—DRESS, they align themselves.

At the command FRONT, turn the head to the front.

The troopers having been sufficiently exercised in marching with open files, the instructor halts the platoon, and commands :

1. *Close files to the right (or to the left.)*
2. MARCH.
3. *Right (or left)]—DRESS.*
4. FRONT.

At the command MARCH, all the troopers except the right file passage to the right, as prescribed, and resume their places boot to boot.

After having dressed the platoon, it is marched with files closed.

The troopers march straight forward, feeling lightly the boot towards the side of the guide.

When the troopers begin to manage their horses properly *at the walk*, they are required to open and close files, marching at the same gait, taking care not to repeat these movements too often, but to make them march some time after having opened the files, before closing them, and after having closed the files, before opening them; for this purpose the instructor commands:

1. *Open files to the left (or to the right.)*
2. MARCH.

At the command MARCH, all the troopers except the right file make a *quarter-turn to the left*, at the same time advancing and preserving their alignment; when they are at one pace from the man on the right, they straighten their horses and move forward.

To close files, the instructor commands:

1. *Close files to the right (or to the left.)*
2. MARCH.

This movement is executed following the same principles, but by inverse means. Each trooper should close the leg in sufficient time to prevent his horse from pressing against the one on which he closes.



The files are always opened towards the side opposite to the guide, and closed upon him.

These movements having been executed to the right and to the left in marching *at the walk*, they are repeated *at the trot*, passing frequently *from the walk to the trot* and *from the trot to the walk*.

The platoon is then exercised in commencing *the trot* from a halt, and in halting while marching at this gait.

## Counter-march.

The platoon having arrived at the extremity of the ground, in order to change the direction the instructor commands :

1. *Counter-march—by the right flank.*
2. *By file to the right.*
3. MARCH.

At the command *counter-march—by the right flank*, the assistant instructor places himself facing to the rear at 6 paces from the rear rank, and in such a position that the trooper who is to be placed on his left may find himself in the direction of the left file of the platoon. The file-closer places himself on the right of the platoon, facing to the right, the croup of his horse 1 pace from and on the line of haunches of the horses of the rear-rank, in order to mark the wheeling point.

At the command MARCH, the trooper on the right of each rank turns to the right, the rear-rank man joining in his movement the front-rank man ; they then wheel together to the right, the latter lengthening a little his gait ; they pass before the file-

closer, very near the croup of the horses of the rear-rank, and are followed by the other troopers, who execute successively the same movement, taking care to pass over the same ground.

When the first file is within two paces of the assistant-instructor, who indicates the point on which it is to form, the instructor commands :

- |           |                         |
|-----------|-------------------------|
| 1. FRONT. | 3. <i>Right</i> —DRESS. |
| 2. HALT.  | 4. FRONT.               |

At the commands FRONT and HALT, the first file turns to the left and halts, the trooper of the rear-rank taking care to slacken the pace and place himself exactly behind his file-leader. All the other files execute successively the same movement.

At the last command, which is FRONT, turn the head to the front.

The instructor gives the command *right*—DRESS immediately after that of halt, and commands FRONT when the last file is aligned.

The assistant-instructor and file-closer return to their places.

The counter-march is executed by the left, on the same principles, at the commands : 1. *Counter-march—by the left flank* : 2. *By file to the left* : 3. MARCH. And afterwards : 1. FRONT : 2. HALT : 3. *Left*—DRESS : 4. FRONT.

The instructor observes that the troopers execute with steadiness their turns to the right or to the left, and that they place themselves on a line parallel to the one originally occupied by the platoon.

The counter-march should be generally executed *at the trot*. For this purpose, after the second command, the instructor indicates the gait.

## Wheelings.

There are two kinds of wheels: *the wheel on a fixed pivot* and *the wheel on a moveable pivot*.

The wheel is always on a *fixed pivot*, except when the command is *right* (or *left*)—TURN.

The troopers should execute this movement without disuniting, and without ceasing to observe the alignment.

In every kind of wheel, the conductor of the marching flank should measure with his eye the arc of the circle he is to pass over, so that it may not be necessary for the files either to open or close. He turns his head occasionally towards the pivot; if he perceives that the troopers are too much crowded, or too open, he increases or diminishes gradually the extent of his circle, gaining more ground to the front than to the side.

Each trooper of the front rank should describe his circle in the ratio of the distance at which he may be from the pivot. As these different arcs are all passed over in the same time, it is necessary that each trooper should slacken his pace in proportion to the distance from the marching flank.

During the wheel, the troopers should turn the head slightly towards the marching flank, to regulate the rapidity of their march and to keep themselves aligned; they should also feel lightly the boot on the side of the pivot, in order to remain closed to that side. They should nevertheless yield to pressure coming from the pivot, and resist that from the opposite direction. The horses are slightly turned towards the pivot, in order to keep them upon the circular line they have to pass over.

When the troopers have opened, they should approach the pivot insensibly, diminishing their circle by degrees, gaining more ground to the front than to the side. In this case, they give alternately a glance to the pivot and to the marching flank, taking care not to force the pivot.

When the troopers have closed too much, they should endeavor to correct the fault gradually, increasing their

circle by degrees, and gaining more ground to the front than to the side. For this purpose, they give alternately a glance to the marching flank and to the pivot, taking care to feel lightly the boot towards the side of pivot.

In every kind of wheel the troopers should cease wheeling, and retake the direct march at the command FORWARD, at whatever point of the wheel they may be; it is necessary to observe, also, that the flanks which become pivots, or marching flanks, do not slacken or augment the pace before the command of execution.

### To wheel on a fixed pivot.

The object of the wheel on a fixed pivot is, when the platoon forms a part of the squadron, to pass from the order of battle to the order of column, and from the order of column to the order of battle.

The trooper who forms the pivot of the wheel turns upon his own ground, without advancing or reining-back and without passing to the right or to the left, so that the centre of gravity of his horse remains always on the same point. Thus, in wheeling to the right, the shoulders of the pivot horse describe an arc of circle in passing from left to right, while the haunches describe another in passing from right to left.

The trooper at the pivot should turn his head slightly towards the marching flank, that he may continue aligned on the conductor of that flank.

When the platoon is marching, the pivot halts, and the marching flank executes its movement at the same gait as before the wheel.

If the instructor indicates a new gait, in order to wheel, the marching flank wheels at this gait; all the other troopers, who regulate the rapidity of their march in accordance with their distance from the marching flank, take freely the new gait at the command FORWARD.

When the platoon is halted after a wheel on a fixed

pivot, the alignment is always ordered toward the side of the marching flank; but as the pivot should never move from its place, the marching flank should come up abreast of it.

When the platoon is marched forward after a wheel on a fixed pivot, the guide is ordered on the side of the marching flank, immediately after the command FORWARD, unless the movement of the platoon in the squadron requires the contrary.

The wheelings are executed at first in single rank; for this purpose, the front rank is marched forward, and halted when arrived at a distance from the rear rank equal to double its front; the file-closer remains at his place; the assistant instructor places himself behind the front rank; each of them observes the rank behind which he is placed.

The ranks being aligned, the instructor commands :

1. *Platoon in circle right (or left) wheel.*
2. MARCH.

At the command MARCH, the troopers put themselves in motion, turning the head towards the marching flank. The non-commissioned officer who conducts this flank marches *at a walk*, measuring with the eye the extent of the circle he is to pass over, that neither opening nor closing may be caused in the rank, and that the troopers may keep aligned. The pivot man turns upon his own ground, regulating himself upon the marching flank.

The instructor directs the troopers to avoid as far as practicable, all pressure in the ranks, which would cause confusion on extended fronts and at rapid gates.

When the platoon has executed several wheels, to halt it, the instructor commands :

- |                    |                                   |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Platoon.</i> | 3. <i>Left (or right)</i> —DRESS. |
| 2. HALT.           | 4. FRONT.                         |

At the command HALT, the troopers straighten their horses and halt with steadiness.

At the command *left (or right)*—DRESS, they align themselves towards the side indicated.

At the command FRONT, turn the head to the front.

The two ranks are then marched forward, preserving between them the same distance, and made to recommence the wheel. When the instructor wishes the platoon to take the direct march, he commands

1. FORWARD.
2. *Guide left (or right.)*

At the first command, which is FORWARD, the pivot resumes the gait at which it was previously marching.

All the other troopers straighten their horses, and the two flanks move forward at the same gait, conforming to the principles of the direct march.

At the command *guide left (or right,)* the troopers regulate their movement towards the side indicated.

When the troopers have executed several wheels to the right and to the left, interrupted occasionally by direct marches, and when the horses become calm, the instructor causes them to pass to the trot; after several wheels at the trot, they resume the walk.

If the platoon is wheeling to the right, and the instructor wishes it to change the wheel to the left without halting he commands :

1. *Platoon in circle left wheel.*
2. MARCH.

At the command MARCH, the left flank halts, and becomes the pivot. The right flank assuming the gait at which the left flank was marching, moves forward and describes a circle proportionate to the extent of the front. All the other troopers straighten their horses, and guide them so as to pass over new circles in the opposite direction.

When the troopers begin to wheel regularly, the instructor requires the conductors of the marching flanks to regulate the gait so as to arrive together in line and in column.

The troopers being sufficiently exercised at the wheels in single rank *at the walk* and *the trot*, the ranks are closed and the wheels executed by platoon, following the same gradation.

The instructor commands :

1. *Platoon in circle right (or left) wheel.*
2. MARCH.

At the command MARCH, the troopers of the front rank execute this movement, as prescribed. The troopers of the rear rank turn the head and carry the hand towards the marching flank, so that each one may be out of the direction of his file leader by two troopers. For this purpose, the moment the wheel commences, each rear rank man executes a *quarter-turn to the left*, sustaining the haunches of his horse with the right leg, when the wheel is to the right, (or a *quarter-turn to the right*, sustaining the haunches of his horse with the left leg when the wheel is to the left,) keeping during the wheel in the direction of his new file-leader, and remaining at the distance of 2 feet from the front rank. The two rear rank men on the marching

flank, who are without file-leaders, should describe their circle without being farther outside of the front rank than is necessary, and be able to resume their places behind their file-leaders easily. During the wheel, they should regulate their gait so that the rear rank, which aligns itself upon them, may be at its proper distance.

To stop the wheel, the instructor commands :

- |                    |  |
|--------------------|--|
| 1. <i>Platoon.</i> | 3. <i>Left</i> (or <i>right</i> )—DRESS. |
| 2. HALT.           | 4. FRONT.                                |

At the command *platoon*, the rear rank men straighten their horses and return to the direction of their file-leaders.

At the command HALT, all the troopers stop.

At the command *left* (or *right*)—DRESS, they align themselves towards the side indicated.

At the command FRONT, turn the head to the front.

The platoon is then marched to the front, and made to repeat the same movement.

When the instructor wishes the platoon to resume the direct march, he commands :

- |             |  |
|-------------|--|
| 1. FORWARD. | 2. <i>Guide left</i> (or <i>right</i> ). |
|-------------|--|

At the first command, which is FORWARD, the rear rank men replace themselves behind their file-leaders, and march straight forward.

The platoon wheeling to the right, to wheel to the opposite side without halting, the instructor commands :

- |   |           |
|---|-----------|
| 1. <i>Platoon in circle left wheel.</i> | 2. MARCH. |
|---|-----------|



At the command *platoon in circle left wheel*, the rear rank men return to the direction of their file-leaders.

At the command MARCH, the front rank men conform to what is prescribed, the rear rank men carry the hand towards the marching flank.

The instructor gives the command MARCH, the moment the rear rank men have taken up the direction of their file-leaders.

To give the troopers the habit of correcting faults, the pivot man is directed to bear against the rank, so that the other troopers feeling the pressure from that direction, may learn to gain ground towards the marching flank. The pivot is then directed to gain ground in the opposite direction, which would require the other troopers to approach him gradually.

When the troopers have acquired in the execution of these movements, *at the walk*, the intelligence and skill necessary to avoid confusion, they are repeated *at the trot*.

The platoon being halted, to place it in a direction perpendicular to the original front the instructor commands :

1. *Platoon right (or left) wheel.*
2. MARCH.
3. HALT.
4. *Left (or right)—DRESS.*
5. FRONT.

Which is executed on the same principles of the wheel on a fixed pivot.

The instructor gives the command HALT, when the marching flank has nearly terminated its wheel.

The platoon being halted, to face it to the rear, the instructor commands :

1. *Platoon right-about (or left-about) wheel.*
2. MARCH.
3. HALT.
4. *Left (or right)*—DRESS.
5. FRONT.

Which is executed following the principles just prescribed, the platoon passing over a half circle.

The instructor gives the command HALT, when the marching flank has nearly completed the half circle, and the platoon is on a line parallel to the original front.

The platoon being halted, to place it towards its right in a direction oblique to the original front, the instructor commands :

1. *Platoon right half (or left half) wheel.*
2. MARCH.
3. HALT.
4. *Left (or right)*—DRESS.
5. FRONT.

Which is executed on the principles of the wheel on a fixed pivot.

The instructor gives the command HALT, when the marching flank has nearly completed its half-wheel to the right or to the left.

Before dressing the platoon, the trooper on the marching flank is made to come up abreast of the pivot man, so that the other troopers will not have to rein-back in order to align themselves.

The platoon being on the march, the same movements

are executed at the commands: 1. *Platoon right (or left) wheel, right-about (or left-about) wheel right-half (or left-half) wheel*; 2. MARCH; 3. FORWARD; 4. *Guide right (or left.)*

At the command MARCH, the wheeling flank wheels at the gait at which the platoon was marching; the pivot flank halts.

At the third command, which is FORWARD, the pivot resumes its original pace, and the two flanks move forward at the same gait.

These movements being properly executed from a halt and *at the walk*, are repeated *at the trot*.

## To wheel on a moveable pivot.

The wheel on a moveable pivot is employed in the successive changes of direction in column.

In this wheel the object of the moveable pivot is to leave by degrees the ground on which the movement commences, by advancing in the new direction.

The conductor of the marching flank should increase his gait and describe his arc, of circle so as to cause the files neither to open nor close. The pivot describes *an arc of five paces*, slackening the gait. In each rank the troopers from the centre to the marching flank increase the gait progressively, so that the centre man preserves the gait at which the platoon was marching. The troopers from the centre to the pivot slacken the gait progressively. At the end of the wheel on a moveable pivot, the portion of the rank which had augmented its gait should slacken it, and that which had slackened its gait should augment it. All the troopers straighten their horses; the marching flank and the pivot resume the gait at which they originally marched.

The platoon being on the march, and supposed to be

the head of the column, to cause it to change direction, the instructor commands :

*Head of column to the left (or to the right.)*

At this command, the assistant instructor commands :

1. *Left (or right)*—TURN.      2. FORWARD.

At the first part of the first command, which is *left (or right)*, the pivot prepares to slacken, and the marching flank to augment the gait.

At the second part of the same command, which is TURN, the platoon turns to the left or to the right, the pivot slackening its gait, in describing *an arc of five paces* ; the marching flank augments its gait, and regulates itself by the pivot during the whole of the wheel.

At the last command, which is FORWARD, all the troopers straighten their horses, the pivot and marching flank moving forward in the gait at which the platoon was originally marching.

The troopers not having been exercised to wheel *at the gallop* on a fixed pivot, they are made to wheel on a moveable pivot only in marching *at the walk*, that the marching flank, which should increase its gait will have to take only *the trot*.

To exercise the troopers in wheeling *at the gallop* on a fixed pivot, the progression established for the exercise *at the walk* and *at the trot* is followed, except that intentional faults are not committed in order to be corrected, and that the platoon is always halted before changing the direction of the wheel.

The instructor changes the gait frequently, and avoids galloping too long to the same hand.

The platoon is exercised also to wheel *at the trot* and *at the gallop*, in setting out from a halt, and to halt while wheeling at these gaits.

## Individual oblique march.

The platoon marching in line, to cause it to gain ground, towards one of its flanks, without changing the front, the instructor commands :

1. *Right (or left) oblique.*                      2. MARCH.

At the command MARCH, the troopers execute all at the same time a *quarter-turn to the right*, so that the head of each horse may be opposite the lower part of the neck of the horse on his right, and that the right knee of each trooper may be in rear of the left knee of the trooper on his right. The first movement being executed, the troopers move forward in the new direction, regulating themselves upon the guide.

When the platoon has obliqued sufficiently, the instructor commands :

### FORWARD.

At this command, the troopers straighten their horses and move forward, regulating themselves upon the guide.

In the oblique march, the guide is always on the obliquing side, without being indicated ; and after the command FORWARD, the guide returns, without indication, to the side on which it was originally.

When the troopers are not closed they should increase progressively the gait, in order to approach the side

towards which they march; they should insensibly slacken the gait if they are too much closed, or more advanced than the flank towards which they oblique. All these movements are executed, gaining more ground to the front than to the side.

The platoon marching *at the walk*, to execute the oblique *at the trot*, the instructor commands: 1. *Right (or left) oblique—trot*; 2. MARCH.

When the platoon has obliqued sufficiently, the instructor commands: FORWARD.

The guide observes particularly to commence *the trot* without precipitation.

The same course is observed if the platoon is marching *at the trot*, and the object is to oblique *at the gallop*.

The platoon marching in line, to break it by fours or by twos, at the same gait.

The instructor commands:

1. *By fours (or by twos)*.
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide left*.

At the command MARCH, the four (or two) first files of the right continue to march forward at the same gait; the other files halt and break successively, by fours (or by twos) as prescribed, in breaking from a halt.

The platoon marching in line, to break it by file the movement is executed on the same principles, the first file only continuing to march forward.

The platoon marching *at the trot*, is broken on the same

principles, the first files continuing to march at the same gait, all the other files assume *the walk* at the command MARCH, and resume *the trot* as they break from the platoon.

The same course is observed when the platoon marches *at the gallop*; the first files continue to march at that gait, the others resume the trot at the command MARCH, and resume *the gallop* as they commence to oblique.

To break the platoon by the left, the movement is executed following the same principles, but by inverse-means, at the commands: 1. *By fours (or by twos) from the left*; 2. MARCH; 3. *Guide right*.

The platoon marching in column by twos or by fours, to form it at the same gait.

The platoon marching in column, right in front, the instructor commands:

1. *Form platoon*. 2. MARCH. 3. *Guide right*.

The movement is executed as prescribed for *front into line*. •

The platoon marching in column *at the trot*, right in front, the instructor commands:

1. *Form platoon*. 2. MARCH. 3. *Guide right*.

At the command MARCH, the two (or four) first files pass *to the walk*; the other files continue to march at the same gait, oblique immediately to the left, march straight forward in this direction, make a *quarter-turn to the right* on coming opposite the

place they are to occupy in the platoon, and pass *to the walk* on arriving upon the alignment of the first.

At the command *Guide right* they dress towards the right.

When the command is *at the gallop*, the platoon is formed on the same principles. The two (or four) first files take *the trot*, at the command MARCH; the other files continue to march *at the gallop*, and take *the trot* on arriving upon the alignment of the first.

When the column is marching by file, the platoon is formed on the same principles.

The column marching left in front, the platoon is formed on the same principles, but by inverse means, at the command: 1. *Form platoon*; 2. MARCH; 3. *Guide left*.

The platoon marching in line, to break it by fours or by twos, doubling the gait.

The instructor commands:

1. *By fours (or by twos)—trot.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide left.*

At the command MARCH, the four (or two) first files of the right take *the trot*; the others continue to march *at the walk*, and take successively *the trot* when they oblique to the right, in order to enter the column.



The platoon marching *at the trot*, the instructor commands :

1. *By fours (or by twos)—gallop.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide left.*

Which is executed as prescribed.

The platoon marching in line, to break it by file, the movement is executed on the same principles.

When the platoon marches *at the gallop*, it is always broken without doubling the gait.

To break the platoon by the left, the movement is executed on the same principles, but by inverse means, at the commands : 1. *By fours (or by twos) from the left—trot (or gallop)*; 2. MARCH; 3. *Guide right.*

The platoon marching in column by twos or by fours, to form it, doubling the gait.

The platoon marching in column, right in front, the instructor commands :

1. *Form platoon—trot.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide right.*

At the command MARCH, the two (or four) first files continue to march forward at the same gait; the other files take *the trot*, oblique immediately to the left, march in this direction, make a *quarter-turn to the right* on coming opposite the place they are to occupy in the platoon, and pass *to the walk* on arriving upon the alignment of the first.

At the command *guide right*, they dress towards the right.

The platoon marching in column, *at the trot*, right in front, the instructor commands :

1. *Form platoon—gallop.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide right.*

Which is executed as just prescribed.

When the column is *at the gallop*, the platoon is always formed at the same gait.

When the column is marching by file, the platoon is formed on the same principles.

The column marching left in front, the platoon is formed on the same principles, but by inverse means, at the commands : 1. *Form platoon—trot (or gallop)*; 2. MARCH; 3. *Guide left.*

## Movements by fours, the platoon being in column or in line.

The platoon being in column, right in front, the instructor commands :

1. *By fours—left (or right) wheel.*
2. MARCH.

At the command MARCH, each rank of four executes its wheel to the left, according to the principles of the wheel on a fixed pivot; Nos. 4 turn upon themselves, sustaining with the left leg the haunches of their horses, in order not to constrain the movement of the rank immediately behind them; all the troopers regulate themselves towards the marching flanks.

The movement being nearly completed the instructor commands :

1. HALT.
2. *Right* (or *left*)—DRESS.
3. FRONT.

At the command HALT, the troopers straighten their horses and halt with steadiness.

In this movement, the front and rear-rank execute, separately, a wheel on a fixed pivot. Each rank of fours belonging to the rear-rank is placed at the side of the rank of fours, composed of its file leaders. When the movement is terminated, the platoon is in one rank.

The platoon being in one rank, it is put again in column by the commands prescribed, then the troopers of the rear-rank are placed in front of their file-leaders. In executing again two *wheels to the left by fours*, the platoon is put in its natural order.

In the first *wheel to the left by fours*, the leading rank of fours should execute its movement slowly, in order to give the others time to execute theirs; but in the second *wheel to the left by fours*, the last rank of fours, which becomes head of the column, should execute its movement in lengthening a little the gait, so as not to retard the rear of the column.

The platoon being in column, and having executed a *wheel to the left by fours*, which puts it in a single rank, to face it in the opposite direction, the instructor commands :

1. *By fours left-about* (or *right-about*) *wheel*.
2. MARCH.

At the command MARCH, each rank of fours *wheels to the left-about* on the principles prescribed for the *wheel to the left by fours*.

To halt after being wheeled about, the instructor commands :

1. HALT.
2. *Right* (or *left*)—DRESS.
3. FRONT.

To put the platoon again in column in the natural order, the instructor causes to be executed *a wheel to the left by fours*.

When the column is marching, the movement is executed as prescribed, observing that, at the command MARCH, the pivots halt immediately and turn upon themselves, supporting with the left leg the haunches of their horses.

The movement being nearly terminated, the instructor commands :

1. FORWARD.
2. *Guide right* (or *left*).

At the first command, which is FORWARD, the pivots and all the other troopers, conforming to the principles of the direct march, regulate themselves towards the guide.

The platoon marching in column, and having made one *wheel to the left by fours*, which puts it in single rank, the instructor causes to be executed *a wheel to the left-about* (or *to the right-about*) *by fours*; the movement being nearly terminated, he commands :

1. FORWARD.
2. *Guide right* (or *left*).

To put the platoon again in column in the natural order, the instructor causes to be executed *a wheel to the left* (or *to the right*) *by fours*, and indicates the guide to the left.

The platoon marching in column by fours, right in front, to cause it to march to the rear, the instructor commands :

1. *By fours left-about (or right-about) wheel.*
2. MARCH.
3. FORWARD.
4. *Guide right (or left).*

Which is executed on the principles prescribed, observing that the ranks of fours should finish the movement at the same time ; that they should commence the last half of the wheel gently, regulating themselves upon the last rank of fours, which becoming the head of the column, lengthens the gait so as not to retard the others. After this movement, the troopers of the rear-rank are placed in front of their file-leaders.

To put the column again in the natural order, the instructor causes to be executed a *wheel to the right-about (or to the left-about) by fours.*

The platoon being in line, to cause it to gain ground towards its right or towards its left, the instructor commands :

1. *By fours right (or left) wheel.*
2. MARCH.
3. FORWARD.
4. *Guide left (or right).*

The platoon having *wheeled to the right by fours*, the troopers are formed upon a front of eight. Each rank of fours having executed the movement separately, the four troopers of the rear rank find themselves on the right of the four troopers of the

front rank.\* It is the reverse if the movement is executed by the left.

The platoon having *wheeled to the right* (or *to the left*) *by fours*, and being upon a front of eight, to change the direction, the instructor commands :

*Head of column to the left* (or *to the right*).

At this command the assistant-instructor commands :

1. *Left* (or *right*)—TURN.      2. FORWARD.

Which is executed as prescribed, each rank of eight wheeling upon the same ground with the first as they reach it.

To put the platoon again in line, the instructor commands :

1. *By fours left* (or *right*) *wheel*.
2. MARCH.
3. HALT.
4. *Right* (or *left*)—DRESS.
5. FRONT.

\* When it is necessary to break a platoon by fours, and there is not sufficient space in front, the instructor commands :

1. *By fours right* (or *left*) *wheel*.      4. MARCH.
2. MARCH.      5. *Guide left* (or *right*.)
3. *By fours*.

At the second command, the platoon wheels to the right by fours. At the fourth command, the first set of fours on the right of the front rank moves forward; when the croups of their horses are opposite the men of the set of fours of the rear rank on their right, this set turn their horses' heads to the left, and by an oblique march cover their front rank men; and so on successively. The sets of fours of the front rank, take care not to leave more space between them, and the set of fours of the front rank, which precedes them, than is sufficient to admit the set of fours from the rear rank.

This movement to the left is executed by inverse means.

The platoon having *wheeled to the right* (or *to the left*) *by fours*, and being formed upon a front of eight, to march to the rear in this order, the instructor causes to be executed a *wheel to the right* or *left-about*.

The platoon being in line, to cause it to march to the rear, the instructor commands :

1. *By fours left-about* (or *right-about*) *wheel*.
2. MARCH.
3. FORWARD.
4. *Guide right* (or *left*).

After this movement, the rear rank is before the front rank, and the ranks of fours are inverted throughout the platoon.

In the march to the rear, the platoon conforms to the principles of the direct march. The instructor requires the same precision as when they march in the natural order.

The platoon is faced to the front by the same movement.

Before commencing the movements by *fours*, the instructor assures himself that the troopers know their numbers, and that those of the rear rank are at their proper distance. He observes that the pivots do not slacken the gait at the preparatory command ; that they halt and turn without reining back, at the command MARCH ; that they gain ground to neither side, and sustain the haunches of their horses, regulating themselves upon the marching flanks ; finally, that the men on the marching flanks turn their horses slightly towards the pivots, and that they commence and close the movement gently.

In the flank movements, the assistant-instructor places himself on the side of the guide, abreast of the leading rank of eight. The file-closer *turns to the right* (or *to the left*), and marches at his place when the platoon is in line.

In the wheels to the right or left-about, the platoon being in line, the assistant-instructor and file-closer wheel about separately, and are placed, the assistant-

instructor behind the centre of the platoon, the file-closer in front of the centre of the rear rank become the front.

The movements by *fours* should be executed *to the right* and *to the left* alternately, and at all the gaits, except *the gallop*.

When the column is marching right in front, it wheels by fours to *the left-about*; and when left in front, it wheels by fours to the right-about.

The platoon marching in line with open ranks, and the files one pace apart, the troopers are made to execute the manual of arms.

The platoon marching in column by file, the troopers having the distance of 3 paces, the instructor causes the exercise of the sabre to be executed.

The exercise being terminated, the troopers are ordered to dismount and file off.

## To charge by platoon.

To charge by platoon, the instructor orders the sabre to be drawn. The platoon is commanded by the assistant-instructor, that the instructor may be able to move where ever he can best observe the faults.

The opposite line is marked out 200 paces to the front, by two troopers, the distance of the front of the platoon apart, and facing each other.

To commence the move, the assistant-instructor commands :

1. *Platoon forward.*
2. *Guide right (or left).*
3. MARCH.

When the platoon has marched 20 paces, the assistant-instructor commands :

1. *Trot.*
2. MARCH.



At 60 paces further, he commands :

1. *Gallop.*
2. MARCH.

At 80 paces further, he commands : CHARGE.

At this command, the troopers of both ranks take the position of *raise*—SABRE. They give hand and lengthen the gallop, without losing control of their horses or disuniting.

When the platoon arrives at 20 paces from the troopers who trace the new line, the assistant-instructor commands :

1. *Attention.*
2. *Platoon.*
3. HALT.
4. *Right (or left)*—DRESS.
5. FRONT.

At the command *attention*, the troopers carry the sabre to the shoulder.

At the command *platoon*, they take the *trot*.

At the command HALT, they stop.

At the command *right*—DRESS, they align themselves to the right.

At the command FRONT, turn the head to the front.

The troopers should be exercised at the charge with the greatest care, without being required to repeat it too often.

The instructor requires *the gallop* to be kept up; he sees that the troopers preserve ease in the ranks, that they hold a light hand, so that the horses not being constrained in their movements may not become too restive. He observes that the troopers carry the upper part of the body a little forward, in order to aid the impulsion, remaining at the same time well seated, which gives them

a facility in conducting their horses and using the sabre ; finally, that the rear rank keeps at its proper distance. It is better, however, that the rear rank should have too much than too little room.

The instructor explains to the troopers, that it is in keeping their horses in hand, in causing them to feel from time to time the effect of the bit, in moving parallel to the flank files, and remaining always abreast of them, that the shock of the charge becomes the greatest. Finally, the instructor directs the troopers not to change the gait before the command, and to lengthen the gallop only at the command **CHARGE**.

## Rallying.

To exercise the troopers in rallying, the platoon is formed at the extremity of the ground, the sabres are drawn, and the signal *to disperse* is sounded ; at this signal, the troopers disperse and charge as forages ; the instructor and the flank files remain in place, to mark out the rallying point. When the troopers have marched 150 or 200 paces, the instructor orders *the rally* to be sounded.

At this signal, the troopers *wheel to the left-about*, rejoin the platoon by the shortest line, and resume their places in the ranks.

The rallying should be executed rapidly, but without noise, the troopers entering the ranks always by the rear.

As soon as two-thirds of the troopers have joined, the instructor commands the platoon to move forward. The first time, the platoon is rallied *at the trot*, and then *at the gallop*. This movement is repeated without retaining the flank files ; in this case the troopers rally behind the instructor.

## Skirmishing.

The platoon being supposed to form a part of the squadron, it is dispersed as skirmishers, in order to cover the front and the flanks of the squadron.

The platoon being in line at the extremity of the ground, the instructor causes the schabraques to be raised, the holsters uncovered, and the arms loaded; he marches the platoon forward, and when he wishes to disperse the troopers as skirmishers, he commands:

1. *Six files from right—as skirmishers.\**
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide right.*

At the first command, the file-closer places himself in front of the six files of the left, of whom he takes command.

These six files are destined to support the skirmishers and to relieve them.

At the command MARCH, the file-closer commands HALT, to the six files of the left, and causes them to draw the sabre.

At the same command, the six files of the right continue to march forward; after going ten paces, they disperse as skirmishers, extending themselves so as to cover the supposed front of a squadron, passing beyond each of its flanks. The right trooper obliquely to the right, the left trooper to the left. The troopers of the rear rank come up as soon as

---

\* Half the platoon skirmish, while the other half remain as a support; if possible, let each platoon have a minimum of 16; then 8 files would skirmish with 8 in reserve.

possible, abreast of the front rank, each one placing himself on the left of his file-leader, and as soon as they are in line, all take the position of *advance*—CARBINE, or *raise*—PISTOL. They continue to march until the signal *halt*, No. 2.

The instructor causes the *halt* to be sounded when the skirmishers are at 100 or 150 paces from the reserve.

The troopers keep at 5 paces apart, regulating themselves towards the guide during the whole time they act as skirmishers.

The assistant-instructor places himself in rear of the skirmishers, in order to superintend their movements.

The chief of the platoon, followed by his trumpeter, places himself half way between the skirmishers and the reserve; he moves along the line wherever he thinks his presence most necessary. The reserve and the skirmishers execute their movements at the signals of the trumpeter who follows the officer.

If the chief of the platoon wishes the skirmishers to move forward, he causes the *forward*, No. 1, to be sounded; each skirmisher moves forward, regulating his movements by those of the guide, and preserving his interval; the reserve follows them, keeping at its proper distance.

To move the skirmishers towards the right, *to the right*, No. 4, is sounded; each trooper turns to the right and marches in the direction of those who precede him, taking care to preserve his distance; the reserve also turns to the right.

To face the skirmishers again to the front, *to the left*, No. 3, is sounded; the skirmishers and the reserve turn to the left.

To move the skirmishers towards the left, *to the left*, No. 3, is sounded; each skirmisher turns to the left and marches in the direction of those who precede him,

taking care to preserve his distance. The reserve also turns to the left.

To face the skirmishers again to the front, *to the right*, No. 4. is sounded; the skirmishers and the reserve turn to the right.

If, after having turned to the right, the instructor wishes the skirmishers to move towards the opposite side, he orders *the about*, No. 5, to be sounded; the skirmishers and the reserve *turn to the left-about*, and move forward.

If, after having turned to the left, the instructor wishes the skirmishers to move towards the opposite side, he causes *the about*, No. 5. to be sounded; the skirmishers and the reserve *turn to the right-about*, and move forward.

During the flank movements, if the troopers are to continue firing, they leave the column and face the enemy for that purpose. As soon as they have fired, they resume their places in the column, doubling the gait.

The skirmishers are marching to the front or at a halt; if the instructor wishes the line to move to the rear, the chief of platoon orders the *retreat* to be sounded. At this signal, the troopers of the front rank move forward 5 paces, fire, then turn *to the left-about*, in order to move to the rear, and retire, loading their pieces. When they have marched 50 paces, or more, if necessary, the chief of platoon causes *the about*, No. 5, to be sounded. At this signal, the troopers, who were retiring, face to the front by turning *to the right-about*. The troopers who are in the first line fire and turn *to the left-about*, retire, loading their pieces, pass in the intervals of the line which is in rear, move 50 paces farther, and face to the front at the signal *the about*, No. 5.

The troopers of the line which is in rear, move 5 paces to the front the moment the troopers who retire pass into their intervals; they then commence firing by the flank indicated.

The alternate movement of the two lines continues as long as the skirmishers move to the rear. When the instructor wishes the retreat to cease, the chief of platoon orders *forward*, No. 1, to be sounded. The skirmishers

who are in rear move up, doubling the gait, abreast of those the most advanced, and all march forward until the signal *to halt*, No. 2, is sounded.

If the instructor wishes the whole line of skirmishers to retire at once, he orders *the about*, No. 5, to be sounded.

The reserve retires and faces to the front, regulating its movement by that of the skirmishers, so as to remain always at 60 paces from the second line. It executes its rear movement at the moment the retreating line passes into the intervals of the line which moves forward.

The rallying of skirmishers is always made on the point occupied by the officer.

To rally the skirmishers, the officer places himself habitually in front of the reserve, and causes *the rally*, No. 6, to be sounded. At this signal, the skirmishers *turn-about*, rally on the reserve by the shortest route, and draw the sabre.

If the officer is not with the reserve when *the rally*, No. 6, is sounded, the skirmishers rally upon him, and the reserve comes up and joins them. The troopers are thus exercised to rally upon any point whatever of the line.

If a defile is presented in advance of the front of the line, and orders are given to pass it, the troopers who are opposite first enter it; they are followed at some distance by the other troopers, who *turn by trooper to the left* and *to the right*, in order to put themselves in file.

As soon as the first have passed the defile, they move 50 or 60 paces to the front; the others come up abreast of them obliquing, those of the right to the right, and those of the left to the left. The reserve enters the defile when the first skirmishers have reconnoitred it.

If the skirmishers are to pass a defile placed in rear, they commence by approaching it; when the reserve is at a suitable distance it passes rapidly, and posts itself 50 or 60 paces from and on the side of the passage.

The two troopers who are on the flank, *turn-about to the left*, move to the rear so as to arrive together at the en-

trance of the defile, which they pass immediately. They are followed closely by the other troopers, who execute successively the same movement; the centre troopers, who cover the defile, enter it the last.

At the going out of the defile, the two troopers who are in front turn, one to the left, and the other to the right; and when all the troopers have passed the defile, they stop at the signal *to halt*, No. 2, and face to the front.

The instructor sometimes rallies the skirmishers immediately after having passed the defile, either to the front or to the rear.

These movements are at first executed *at the walk*, then *at the trot*, and finally *at the gallop*. When the troopers have learned to perform these movements well, they are exercised at them, in executing the manual of arms, and in firing; and finally, with the overcoats rolled and carried over the shoulder. When the troopers are *at the gallop*, and the instructor wishes them to pass *to the trot*, he orders *the trot*, No. 7, to be sounded; when they are *at the trot*, and he wishes them to pass *to the walk*, he orders *the halt*, No. 2, and then *the forward*, No. 1, to be sounded.

To commence or to cease firing, the signal is sounded. All the troopers do not fire at once, but one after another, commencing on the side of the guide. They afterwards continue firing without waiting for, or being governed by each other. Each rear rank man has an understanding with his file-leader that, as far as practicable, the piece of one may be always charged while the other is loading; the troopers of the same file should give a mutual support to each other.

When the platoon skirmishes without gaining ground to the front, the skirmishers should nevertheless keep in motion always; each trooper of the front rank, after having fired, moves some steps to the rear, at the same time loading his piece: and as soon as he returns to the line, the rear-rank man of the same file fires, and moves in his turn to the rear.

In the charge as foragers, the men of the rear-rank approach within one or two paces of their file-leaders, to be able to support each other mutually.

As soon as the skirmishers charge, the reserve moves forward to support them.

The skirmishers retire by *turning-about to the left*, and face again to the front by *turning-about to the right*. When they have re-formed in platoon, they return the pistol to the holster, or drop the carbine, and draw the sabre.

To relieve skirmishers, the instructor commands to the reserve :

1. *Six files from left—as skirmishers.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide right.*

At the command MARCH, the reserve disperses and moves up upon the line of old skirmishers. The right trooper of the front-rank passes on the right of the right skirmisher of the front rank; the right trooper of the rear rank on the right of the right skirmisher of the rear rank, and so on throughout, each one passing to the right of the one he relieves, and 5 paces beyond him. The old skirmishers *turn-about* and rally *at a gallop* on the officer, who during the movement is placed at the point where the six files now become the reserve should re-form.

The non-commissioned officer who commanded the six files of the left now takes command of the six files of the right.

If there are two non-commissioned officers with the platoon, each one follows the portion of the platoon to which he is attached.



DRAGOONS.—The dragoons having been sufficiently exercised in all the movements of skirmishing, will be taught to dismount and form with celerity to fight on foot.

At the commencement, all the movements of this instruction will be decomposed, in order to make them better understood.

The platoon being in line, the instructor commands :

*Prepare to fight—ON FOOT.*

*1 time, 4 motions.*

1st. At the last part of the command, which is ON FOOT, prepare to dismount as prescribed.

2d. Execute what is prescribed, *to dismount*; Nos. 4, of each rank, will remain mounted.

3d. Return to the ranks as prescribed, face to the right, pass the reins with the right hand over the head of the horse, seize the extremity of the reins, with the left hand, seize them again with the right hand, 6 inches from the mouth of the horse, the nails upwards; face to the front, and hook up the sabre without letting go the reins.

4th. Face-about to the right, seizing the reins with the left hand, 6 inches from the mouth of the horse, the nails downward, slip the right hand to the extremity of the rein; Nos. 3, of each rank, give the reins to Nos. 4, who remain mounted; Nos. 2 and 1 engage the end of the reins with both hands, in the head-stall of the bridle of the horse which is on the left, passing them under the nose-band and the cheek-piece of the bridle, and tying them in a slip knot, so that each horse may be about one foot from the one to which he is tied; face again to the front by the right, unsling the carbine, and come to a carry.

The instructor commands :

*Dragoons—INTO LINE.*

*1 time.*

At the last part of the command, which is INTO LINE, move twelve paces to the front, turning the back upon the platoon of horses; half the rear rank pass to the right by the right flank, the other half to the left by the left-flank, and places themselves behind their file-leaders.

Nos. 4, who remain on horseback, have charge of the dismounted horses; they take the end of the reins of the first dismounted horse in the left hand, holding them near the bit with the right hand, the nails downward; an assistant-instructor, or file-closer of the platoon, remains with the dismounted horses to direct them.

The dragoons having been sufficiently exercised at the different movements of this instruction, will be required to execute them rapidly without stopping at the several motions, and at the single command, *prepare to fight on foot*, given by the instructor.

The two ranks being formed, the platoon will be conducted where it is to fight on foot, and will there manœuvre as light infantry.\*

The dismounted horses will also be exercised in changing position, by marching by rank and by fours.

When the instructor wishes the dragoons to remount, he will rally them if they are dispersed as skirmishers.

The platoon being rallied and formed, the instructor commands :

*Dragoons, about—FACE.*

He conducts the platoon rear-rank in front; having come within 12 paces of the horses, he commands :

*Dragoons—MOUNT.*

At this command, the dragoons return to their horses rapidly, without alarming them; they sling carbine, mount, and draw the sabre.

The command, *dragoons—mount*, at the commence-

\*Dragoons are armed with good long range guns, and should be as expert in the *light infantry* as in *cavalry tactics*; the best book is that of Col. HARDEE.

ment, will be executed in 4 motions, and from a halt, that the troopers may better understand it. For this purpose, the platoon being rallied and marching with the rear-rank in front, is halted 12 paces from the horses; the instructor then commands:

*Dragoons—MOUNT.*

1 time, 4 motions.

1. At the last part of the command, which is MOUNT, sling the carbine.

2. Rejoin the horses, the rear-rank men passing to the left and right, as prescribed in dismounting; untie the horse, pass the reins over the neck, unhook the sabre, and take the position of the trooper before mounting.

3. Execute the two times of *prepare to mount*.

4. Execute the two times of *mount*, adjust the reins, return to the ranks, and draw the sabre.

## To sling and unsling the carbine (or short rifle.)

The piece being at the dragoon's right side, but on the ground, that is, at the *order arms*, the command is:

*Sling—CARBINE.*

1 time, 2 motions.

1. At the last part of the command, which is CARBINE, raise the carbine perpendicularly with the right hand, and place it in the left hand, which seizes it below the lower band, the thumb extended, the barrel to the front; incline the carbine to the right, that the rings may hang down, the left hand as high as and opposite to the neck; slip the swivel to the front with the right hand, the thumb pressing upon the short side to open it, insert it in the rings.

2. Seize the carbine at the small of the stock with the right hand, let it go with the left hand, which is dropped by the side; pass the carbine behind the back, lowering the muzzle, push the butt to the rear, and drop the right hand by the side.

### *Unslung*—CARBINE.

1 time, 2 motions.

1. At the last part of the command, which is carbine, seize the carbine at the small of the stock with the right hand, raise it, seize it again with the left hand below the lower band, the thumb extended, the hand as high as, and opposite to the neck; incline the carbine to the right, free the swivel from the rings with the right hand, and push the swivel to the rear.

2. Seize the carbine with the right hand, above and near the left hand; bring it down, turning it at the same time, and resume the position of *order*.

## To leap the ditch and the bar.

The instructor causes the troopers to leap the ditch and the bar by twos and by fours, and then by platoon.

### To leap the ditch.

On arriving near the ditch, give the hand and close the legs, to force the horse to make the leap. The moment he reaches the ground, raise slightly the hand in order to sustain him.

### To leap the bar.

On arriving near the bar, rein up the horse slightly, and close the legs. At the moment of making the leap, give the hand, and elevate it slightly as soon as he reaches the ground on the other side.

The trooper, in leaping, should cling to the horse with the thighs and calves of the legs, taking care to lean a little forward as the horse is in the act of springing, and to seat himself well by leaning to the rear at the moment the horse reaches the ground.

Each trooper, after having made the leap, continues to move *at the trot*, and takes his place in the rank which is formed thirty paces beyond the obstacle, taking care to pass to the walk just before halting.

During the first days of this exercise, the troopers leap without arms.

When the troopers have leaped without arms, they repeat the same exercise with arms, and finally with the sabre drawn.

The horses employed should be trained and accustomed to leaping. If, however, a horse refuses to leap, the instructor aids the trooper with a whip.

REMARK.—The last four lessons belong to the drill of the trooper, but in most cases may be deferred until the close of the platoon exercises.

# CAVALRY TACTICS.

---

## PART THIRD.

---

### Drill of the Squadron.

A SQUADRON is composed of 4 platoons, and is the proper tactical unit of Cavalry.

As the Cavalry platoon always contains 12 or 16 FILES, and is subdivided into fours, the Squadron is always (in *rank* and *file*) a *multiple* of 4 and of either 12 or 16. The *rank* and *file* strictly include those only who are counted or *told off* in the fours.

If the number of troopers is sufficient, the platoon of 16 files is preferable; for then there will be in each platoon *sub-divisions* of 8 troopers, called *sections*.

Platoons of 12 are not divisible into sections, for the *cavalry section* requires 2 *fours*.

Two platoons, containing 24 or 32 files, forming a *company*, *division*, or *half-squadron*, is drilled on the same principles as the complete squadron; for which purpose, officers, guides and file-closers will be posted, as in the squadron formation.

The senior officer is 1st *Captain and Chief* of the squadron; the next in rank is 2d Captain. He is charged with the alignment and supervision of the rear-rank and file-closers.

The 1st *Lieutenant* commands the 1st platoon.

The Lieutenant 2d in rank commands the 4th platoon.

The Lieutenant 3d in rank commands the 2d platoon.

The Lieutenant 4th in rank commands the 3d platoon.

The number of officers and non-commissioned officers of a squadron is 22, viz. : 6 *officers*, 8 sergeants and 8 corporals. Vacancies, if any, must be filled from the next lower grade. In assigning positions, the Chief will be styled *No. 1*, the 2d Captain *No. 2*, and so on to the 8th corporal, who will be *No. 22*.

The positions in line of battle are as follows:

No. 1,	1	yard in front of centre of squadron.
No. 2,	3	“ rear “ “
No. 3,	1	“ front “ 1st platoon.
No. 4,	1	“ “ “ 4th “
No. 5,	1	“ “ “ 2d “
No. 6,	1	“ “ “ 3d “
No. 7,	1	“ rear of 3d file from right of squadron.
No. 8,	1	“ “ “ left “
No. 9,		on right of squadron—not counted.
No. 10,		on left “ “ “
No. 11,		“ 1st platoon—is counted.
No. 12,		on right of 2d “ “

- No. 13, on left of 3d platoon—is counted.  
 No. 14, on right of 4th “ “  
 No. 15, “ 1st “ “  
 No. 16, on left but one, 1st platoon—is counted.  
 No. 17, on right “ 2d “ “  
 No. 18, on left of 2d platoon—is counted.  
 No. 19, on right of 3d “ “  
 No. 20, on left but one, 3d platoon—is counted.  
 No. 21, on right “ 4th “ “  
 No. 22, on left of 4th platoon—is counted.

**REMARK.**—The commander may post his Corporals from right to left, either by their height or according to rank.

## Positions in columns of twos and fours.

No. 1, 4 yards from flank, on side of guides, abreast centre of squadron.

No. 2, 4 yards from flank, opposite the guides, abreast centre of squadron.

No. 3, 1 yard in advance of the leading files of squadron.

Nos. 4, 5 and 6, 1 yard from the flank, on side of guides, abreast the front files of their platoons; this is when the *right is in front*.

When the *left is in front*, No. 4 heads the column, and Nos. 3, 5 and 6, are one yard to the right of the column, and abreast of their leading files; Nos. 1 and 2 being on the right and left, at 4 yards distance.

Nos. 7 and 8 (file-closers) one yard from the flank, opposite to the guides, and abreast the centre of their platoons.

Nos. 11 and 12, &c., to No. 22, in their places as counted in the twos and fours.

For the order in column of platoons and divisions, see PLATOON DRILL.

The music is 25 yards in rear of the centre when in line; the same distance from the flank, opposite to the



guides, when in column, until ordered to the front or rear by the commanding officer. One or more trumpeters, as may be ordered, accompany the commander of the squadron.

The captain commanding causes the officers to alternate in the command of the platoons, that they may become familiar with all the positions in the squadron.

He observes the same course with the non-commissioned officers, and gives them sometimes the command of a platoon, to enable them to replace an officer, should it become necessary.

To make the formation in line better understood, they are executed at first from a halt. In this case, each platoon performs its movements separately and successively, at the command of its chief, on receiving notice from the captain commanding.

Each movement, after having been correctly executed by the right, is repeated by the left.

When the squadron has acquired calmness and confidence, and one article is well understood, this article is repeated with sabres drawn, and alternately at all the gaits, except the *wheels to the right, to the left, to the right-about, and to the left-about by fours, the counter-march, the wheels on a moveable pivot by squadron, the individual oblique marches when marching by squadron*, which are executed only *at the walk and at the trot*.

The second captain is charged with the alignment of the rear-rank and the rank of file-closers; he resumes his place in line at the command FRONT.

The captain commanding moves wherever his presence is most required; the troopers are required to observe absolute silence, and all rectifications are done by signs, or in a low voice.

The squadron being formed in two ranks opened, the non-commissioned officers and troopers at the head of their horses, the chief of platoon mounted, at 10 paces from, and facing the centre of their platoons, the captain commanding commands:



At the command MARCH, the platoon moves forward; at one pace from the point which marks the new alignment, the chief of the platoon commands: 1. HALT. 2. *Right*—DRESS.

At the command HALT, the chief of the platoon and the particular guide of the right, continue to march on and establish themselves immediately, the latter bringing the head of his horse against the boot of the principal guide of the right.

The first platoon being correctly aligned, the first captain commands:

1. *By platoon*—*Right*—DRESS.
2. FRONT.

At the first command, the chief of the second platoon commands: 1. *Platoon forward*; 2. *Guide right*; 3. MARCH. The platoon having arrived abreast of the file closers of the platoon which forms the base of the alignment, he commands: 1. HALT; 2. *Right*—DRESS, and at the same time moves forward on the line of the chief of that platoon.

At the command HALT, the platoon stops. At the command *Right*—DRESS, all the troopers move forward together upon the alignment.

Each chief of platoon executes successively the same movement, commanding MARCH when the one who precedes him has commanded HALT.

The particular guide of the left, at the command HALT, from the chief of the fourth platoon, brings up the head of his horse against the boot of the principal guide of the left.

The squadron being aligned, the captain commanding commands: FRONT.

This alignment being correctly executed, it is repeated, giving the new base of alignment a direction oblique to

the front of the squadron. For this purpose, the chief of the first platoon, on receiving notice from the captain-commanding, moves his platoon 24 paces forward, causes it to execute a half-wheel to the right at the commands; 1. *Right half—WHEEL*; 2. *FORWARD*; and after marching it 6 paces in the new direction, he halts and aligns it.

The first platoon being correctly aligned, the first captain commands:

1. *By platoon—Right—DRESS.*
2. *FRONT.*

At the first command, the movement is executed successively; each chief of platoon moves straight forward, and commands: 1. *Right half—WHEEL*; 2. *FORWARD*, so that his platoon may finish its wheel on a fixed pivot at the moment the right arrives opposite the left of the platoon which precedes it.

The squadron being aligned, the first captain commands: *FRONT.*

The captain commanding causes these different alignments to be executed by the left, following the same principles, but by inverse means.

### To open and close the ranks.

To open the ranks, the first captain commands:

1. *Rear rank open order.*
2. *MARCH.*
3. *Right—DRESS.*
4. *FRONT.*

Which is executed as prescribed for the platoon. The troopers of the rear rank rein back 6 paces;

and the chiefs of platoon, at the command MARCH, move forward 6 paces, and face the centre of their platoons by *turning to the left-about*.

To close the ranks, the first captain commands :

1. *Rear rank close order.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Right—DRESS.*
4. FRONT.

Which is executed as prescribed in the platoon drill. The chiefs of platoon move forward at the command MARCH, face to the front by a *turn to the right-about*, and place themselves opposite the centre of their platoons.

### To break the squadron by fours.

The squadron being in line, the first captain commands :

1. *By fours.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide left.*

At the first command, the chief of the first platoon places himself in front of the four files of the right, the right particular guide places himself on his right.

At the command MARCH, the four first files march straight forward, and are followed by all the other files who break successively, as prescribed in the platoon.

The chiefs of the other platoons break with the four first files of their platoons, keeping abreast of them and at one pace from the flank of the column

on the side of the guide, each rank of fours preserving between them the distance of 2 feet.

### Change of direction.

The column marching in column by fours, right in front, to change the direction, the first captain commands :

*Head of column to the left (or to the right.)*

Which is executed as prescribed in the Platoon, the chief of the first platoon conforming to what is indicated for the assistant-instructor.

The squadron marching in column by fours, to form it to the front, to the left, or on right into line.

The squadron marching in column by fours, right in front, the first captain commands :

- |                            |                        |
|----------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. <i>Front into line.</i> | 3. <i>Right—DRESS.</i> |
| 2. MARCH.                  | 4. FRONT.              |

At the command MARCH, the four first files continue to march straight forward ; when they have marched 30 paces, the chief of the first platoon commands : HALT.

At this command, the four first files halt square to the front, the particular guide of the right returns to the right of the squadron. All the other files come up successively, and without the commands of the chiefs of platoon, form to the left and and upon the alignment of the first.

The first captain, who moves to the right flank after the command MARCH, commands the alignment when the chief of the first platoon commands HALT.

The second captain moves also to the right flank, after the command MARCH, in order to rectify the alignment of the rear rank and of the file-closers.

As soon as the chiefs of platoon arrive upon the line, they place themselves at the centre of their platoons and align themselves.

The particular guide of the left returns to the left of the squadron, when the four last files arrive upon the line.

The first captain commands FRONT, when the four last files are aligned.

The column marching right in front, to form it in line on its left flank, the first captain commands :

- |                           |                        |
|---------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. <i>Left into line.</i> | 3. <i>Right—DRESS.</i> |
| 2. MARCH.                 | 4. FRONT.              |

At the command MARCH, the four leading files turn to the left and march straight forward ; when they have marched 30 paces, the chief of the first platoon commands : HALT.

At this command, the four leading files halt, and the particular guide places himself on the right of the squadron. All the other files come up successively, and without the command of the chiefs of platoon, form to the left and on the alignment of the first, observing to keep in the same direction, before turning to the left, so

as not to approach the new line until the proper time.

The first and second captains, the chiefs of platoon, and the particular guide of the left, conform exactly to what is prescribed for the *front into line*.

The column marching right in front, to form line upon the prolongation and in advance of its right flank, the first captain commands :

- |                               |                        |
|-------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. <i>On right into line.</i> | 3. <i>Right—DRESS.</i> |
| 2. MARCH.                     | 4. FRONT.              |

At the command MARCH, the four leading files turn to the right, and march straight forward ; when they have marched 30 paces, the chief of the first platoon commands : HALT.

At this command, the four leading files halt, and the right particular guide takes his place on the right of the squadron. All the other files continue to march forward, and come up successively without the commands of the chiefs of platoon, forming to the left and upon the alignment of the first, observing to keep themselves square in the same direction before turning to the right, so as not to approach the new line before the proper time.

The first and second captains, the chiefs of platoon, and the left particular guide, conform exactly to what is prescribed for the *front into line*.

The squadron is broken by the left, at the commands ;  
1. *By fours from the left* ; 2. MARCH ; 3. *Guide right*.  
When the principles of the direct march in column by



fours, the changes of direction, the obliques, and the different formations in line are firmly impressed, all these movements are executed *at the trot*, and then *at the gallop*.

## To regulate the rapidity of the gaits.

When the marches and formations, prescribed above, have given sufficient uniformity and precision to the gait, the captain commanding will regulate their rapidity. For this purpose he measures off two distances, each about 1,000 paces, and causes them to be passed over successively at all the gaits, to assure himself that, *at the walk*, from 100 to 110 paces is passed over per minute, *at the trot*, from 200 to 240 per minute, and *at the gallop*, about 300 paces per minute.

When the rapidity of the gaits has been properly determined, the squadron is required to pass successively *from the walk to the trot*, and *from the trot to the gallop*, and if the column becomes disunited *at the gallop*, it resumes *the trot*, and then *the walk*.

When the squadron has acquired precision and regularity in the formations at the different gaits, the captain commanding exercises the squadron in breaking by fours from a halt, *at the trot*, and *at the gallop*.

In very even ground, the distance above indicated may be passed over in a shorter time, but the rapidity of the gaits should be increased only under extraordinary circumstances.

## To form the squadron in one rank, and to form it in two ranks.

To form the squadron in one rank, and to re-form it in two ranks, the captain commanding conforms to what is prescribed in the platoon.

The formation of the squadron in one rank, is employed

for *inspections*; in this case, the officers pass to the right of the squadron, and after them, the non-commissioned officers, troopers, and trumpeters, according to their rank.

The squadron being in line, to form it in column with distance.

The first captain commands :

1. *Platoons right wheel.*
2. MARCH.
3. HALT.

At the first command, the left file of each platoon prepares to step off promptly, and the pivot to turn upon its own ground.

At the command MARCH, each platoon executes its wheel to the right, following the principles of the wheel on a fixed pivot, the marching flanks taking care to step off and wheel together.

At the command HALT, the marching flanks and all the troopers halt at the same instant, those of the rear rank resuming their places behind their file-leaders.

The first captain commands HALT, when the platoons have nearly completed the wheels.

The chiefs of platoon, without leaving the centre of their platoons, observe that the movement is correctly executed; after the wheels, if any guide finds himself not in the direction of the one preceding him, he should not endeavor to correct his position until after the march is commenced.

During the movement, the particular guide of the left passes as file-closer behind the second file from the left of the fourth platoon.

The first captain assures himself that each officer and non-commissioned officer preserves the place assigned to him in this order of column.

## To march in column with distance.

The squadron being in open column, right in front, the first captain commands :

1. *Column forward.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide left.*

At the command MARCH, all the platoons put themselves in motion at the same time.

Before the column commences the march, the first captain gives the guide of the first platoon a point of direction ; this non-commissioned officer selects intermediate points, so as to be sure of marching straight. The fixed object given to the guide of the first platoon, is also pointed out to the guide of the second. These two non-commissioned officers preserve, during the march, the direction which has been given to them.

The guides of the third and fourth platoons keep exactly in the same direction.

## Changes of direction by successive wheels.

In the open column, the changes of direction are executed by successive wheels *on a moveable pivot*, so that the march of the column may not be retarded. *The arc of circle described by the pivots should be of 5 paces.*

The column being in march, to change the direction, the first captain commands :

*Head of column to the left or half-left (or to the right or half-right.*

At this command, the chief of the first platoon commands : 1. *Left*—TURN ; 2. FORWARD ; which is executed on the principles of the wheel upon a moveable pivot.

Each chief of platoon gives the same commands successively, so that his platoon may turn upon the same ground.

In this change of direction while marching, the principal guide of the right, at the command *head of column to the left*, moves rapidly to the side of the pivot, and places himself so that the head of his horse will mark the centre point of the arc described by the pivots.

All the platoons commence their wheel at  $2\frac{1}{2}$  paces before arriving abreast of the head of the horse of the principal guide of the right, so as to prevent the column from being thrown out. This non-commissioned officer resumes his place when the last platoon has completed its wheel.

Immediately after having changed the direction of the column, the first captain gives a new point of direction to the guide of the first platoon.

The exact preservation of distances, after the changes of direction, depends upon the equality of the increase given to the gait by the marching flanks ; it is then important that the leading platoon should turn neither too rapidly nor too slowly, and that each platoon should regulate the rapidity of its wheel upon that of the one which precedes it.

When the change of direction is executed from the side opposite to the guide, the pivot becomes the guide during the wheel.

## Individual oblique march.

The squadron marching in column, with distance, right in front, to cause it to gain ground towards one of its flanks, without changing the front of the column, the first captain commands :

1. *Left (or right) oblique.*
2. MARCH.

Which is executed at the same time, in each platoon, as prescribed in the platoon.

The guides of the three last platoons pay attention to march on the same line, to preserve their distances, and keep it in a direction exactly parallel to that of the guide of the first platoon.

To resume the primitive direction, the first captain commands :

### FORWARD.

Which is executed at the same time, in each platoon.

When the oblique march is executed towards the side opposite to the guide, the file-closers preserve their places, notwithstanding the change of guide.

## Change of gait, being in column with distance.

The column is made to pass from the *walk* to the *trot*, and from the *trot* to the *walk*, and when the platoons exe-

cute these changes of gait with uniformity and steadiness, the column is made to commence the march at a *trot*, and to halt while marching at the *trot*.

The first captain observes that the platoons halt, step off, and change the gait at the same instant.

He directs the head of the column sometimes to increase or diminish the gait slightly, without command, to judge of the attention of the guides, and to habituate them to conforming to the movements of the guides who precede them.

To break by fours, by twos, and by file;  
to form twos, fours and platoons at  
the same gait.

The squadron marching in column with distance, right in front, to break by fours at the same gait, the first captain commands :

1. *By fours.*
2. MARCH.

3. *Guide left.*

At the first command, repeated by the chief of the first platoon, this officer, and the particular guide of the right, place themselves as prescribed, in breaking by fours from a halt.

At the command MARCH, repeated by the chief of the first platoon, this platoon breaks by fours, and the chiefs of the three last platoons command: HALT.

The chief of the second platoon, and successively those of the third and fourth, command *by fours*, in sufficient time to command MARCH, the moment the four last files of the preceding platoon com-

mence their oblique movement in order to enter the column.

The squadron marching in column by fours, right in front, to break by twos, at the same gait, the first captain commands :

- |                    |                       |
|--------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. <i>By twos.</i> | 3. <i>Guide left.</i> |
| 2. MARCH.          |                       |

The chiefs of platoon conform to what is prescribed in order to break by fours, and give the commands: HALT, and then—1. *By twos*; 2. MARCH, so as to cause no confusion in the column.

The squadron marching in column by twos, right in front, to break by file at the same gait, the first captain commands :

- |                    |           |
|--------------------|-----------|
| 1. <i>By file.</i> | 2. MARCH. |
|--------------------|-----------|

Which is executed as just prescribed, in order to break by twos, the particular guide of the right placing himself behind the chief of the first platoon.

The squadron marching in column with distance, at the *trot*, right in front, to break by fours, at the same gait, the first captain commands :

- |                     |                       |
|---------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. <i>By fours.</i> | 3. <i>Guide left.</i> |
| 2. MARCH.           |                       |

At the first command, repeated by the chief of the first platoon, this officer, and the particular guide of the right, place themselves as prescribed in breaking the squadron by fours from line, and the chiefs of the three last platoons command :  
*Walk.*

At the command MARCH, repeated by all the chiefs of platoon, the first platoon breaks by fours, and the three last platoons take the *walk*.

The chief of the second platoon, and successively those of the third and fourth, command *by fours—trot*, in sufficient time to command MARCH, when the four last files of the preceding platoon commence their oblique movement in order to enter the column.

The same principles are applicable to breaking by twos and by file.

When the column is at the *gallop*, these movements are executed on the principles just prescribed, the whole column except the four first files passing to the *trot* and resuming successively the *gallop*, as the files break in order to enter the column.

The squadron marching in column by file, right in front, to form twos at the same gait, the first captain commands:

1. *Form twos.*

2. MARCH.

At the command *form twos* and MARCH, successively repeated by the chief of the first platoon, this platoon executes its movement as prescribed in the platoon drill; the particular guide of the right moves to the right of the chief of the first platoon, who commands HALT, after having marched 10 paces.

The three other platoons continue to march by file, and execute successively their formation at the commands of their chiefs, who do not command MARCH, until the first files of their platoons arrive at their proper distance.



The squadron marching in column by twos, right in front, to form platoon at the same gait, the first captain commands :

1. *Form fours.*

2. MARCH.

Which is executed as prescribed, in order to form twos.

The squadron marching in column by fours, right in front, to form platoon at the same gait, the first captain commands :

1. *Form platoons.*

2. MARCH.

At the first command, the chief of the first platoon commands : *Form platoon.*

At the command MARCH, repeated by the chief of the first platoon, the particular guide of the right places himself on the right of this platoon, which forms as prescribed in the platoon drill ; the chief of the platoon commands HALT, after having marched 20 paces.

The other platoons continue to march in column by fours, and form successively at the commands : 1. *Form platoon* ; 2. MARCH, given by their chiefs in sufficient time to command HALT, when the four first files of their platoon arrive at 6 paces from the platoon which precedes.

When the column is at the *trot*, the same principles are conformed to, except that instead of halting the two or four first files of the first platoon pass to the *walk*, at the command MARCH given by their chief. The other platoons continue to march at the *trot*, and execute their movement at the same gait, the two or four first files of each platoon passing also to the *walk*, at the command MARCH

given by their chiefs, when they arrive at their proper distance.

When the column is at the *gallop*, to form twos, fours, &c., the same principles are observed, the two or four first files of each platoon passing to the *trot* at the command MARCH, given by their chief.

When these formations are executed at the *trot*, and at the *gallop*, the guide is announced by the first captain as soon as the first files have doubled, or the first platoon is formed; in the last case only, each chief of platoon repeats the command of the guide as soon as his platoon is formed.

In these formations at the *walk*, the guide is not announced, as the head of the column halts.

To break by fours, by twos, and by file;  
to form twos, fours, and platoons;  
doubling the gait.

The squadron marching in column with distance, right in front, to break by fours, doubling the gait, the first captain commands:

1. *By fours—trot.*    2. MARCH.    3. *Guide left.*

At the first command, repeated by the chief of the first platoon, this officer and the particular guide of the right, place themselves as prescribed in breaking by fours from line.

At the command MARCH, repeated by the chief of the first platoon, this platoon breaks by fours, as prescribed in the platoon drill.

The other platoons continue to march at the *walk*; their chiefs command successively *by fours*

—*trot*, in sufficient time to command MARCH, the moment the four last files of the preceding platoon commence their oblique movement, in order to enter the column.

These principles are applicable to breaking by twos and by file.

When the column is at the *trot*, to break at the *gallop*, the same principles are observed, at the commands: 1. *By fours—gallop*; 2. MARCH; 3. *Guide left*.

When the column is at the *gallop*, these movements are always executed at the same gait.

The squadron marching in column by file to form twos, doubling the gait, the first captain commands:

1. *Form twos—trot*. 2. MARCH. 3. *Guide left*.

At the command *form twos—trot* and MARCH, successively repeated by the chief of the first platoon, this platoon executes its movement as prescribed in the platoon drill, and the particular guide of the right moves to the right of the chief of the first platoon.

At the first command, the chiefs of the three last platoons command: *trot*. At the command MARCH, repeated by them, the three last platoons take the *trot*.

The chief of the second platoon, and successively those of the third and fourth, command: *Form twos*, in sufficient time to command MARCH, the moment the first file of their platoons is nearly at its proper distance; the first file then passes to the *walk*.

The squadron marching in column by twos, to form fours, doubling the gait, the first Captain commands :

1. *Form fours—trot.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide left.*

Which is executed as just prescribed in order to form twos.

The squadron marching in column by fours, to form platoon, doubling the gait, the first captain commands :

1. *Form platoons—trot.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide left.*

At the first command, the chief of the first platoon commands : *Form platoon—trot.*

The chiefs of the three last platoons command *trot.*

At the command MARCH, repeated by these officers, the first platoon forms as prescribed in the platoon drill, and the particular guide of the right places himself on the right of this platoon.

The three last platoons take the *trot*, and form successively at the command *form platoon*, given by their chiefs in sufficient time to command MARCH, when the four first files arrive at their proper distance from the platoon which precedes them ; then these four first files take the *walk*.

The first captain commands *guide left* when the first platoon is formed, and gives a point of direction.

Each chief of platoon repeats successively the command of the guide as soon as his platoon is formed.

When the column is at the *trot*, these formations are

executed at the *gallop*, following the same principles, at the command: 1. *Form twos, or form fours, or form platoons—gallop*; 2. MARCH.

When the column is at the *gallop*, these movements are executed as prescribed, in forming at the same gait, the head of the column passing to the *trot* at the command MARCH.

The foregoing movements are employed in passing defiles, the first captain placing himself always at the head of his squadron in order to direct the movements of it according to the localities. If it happens that the chiefs of the last platoons do not hear the command, they conform immediately to the movements of the platoons which precede them.

The squadron marching in column with distance, to face it in the opposite direction, and to face it again to the front.

The squadron marching in open column, right in front, the first captain commands:

1 *Platoons left-about wheel.*          2. MARCH.

At the first command, the trooper on the left of each platoon, who becomes the pivot, prepares to halt, without however slackening his pace.

At the command, MARCH, the pivots halt, and the marching flanks wheel at the gait in which the column was marching, regulating themselves upon the outer flank of the platoon at the head of the column, so as to complete the first half of the movement at the same instant.

The marching flanks are then governed by the platoon, which becomes the head of the column after the movement is completed.

The movement being nearly finished, the first captain commands:

1. FORWARD.

2. *Guide right.*

During this movement, the particular guide of the left places himself on the left of the fourth platoon; the particular guide of the right takes his place as file-closer in rear of the second file from the right of the first platoon, and the other file-closers pass to the side opposite to the guide.

To cause the squadron to resume its primitive direction, the first captain commands: 1. *Platoons right-about wheel*; 2. MARCH; 3. FORWARD; 4. *Guide left*; which is executed as just prescribed, but by inverse means.

To wheel-about is usually commanded towards the side of the guide; it may, however, be towards the other side when it becomes necessary.

### To halt the column.

The column being on the march, to halt it, the first captain commands:

1. *Column.*

2. HALT.

At the first command, all the platoons prepare to halt.

At the command HALT, all the platoons halt at the same time.

After the command HALT, there should be no movement

In the platoons, the distances and directions should be corrected only in marching.

The first captain places himself behind the guide of the second platoon, to see if the guides of the first and second platoon have marched upon the point indicated; he also observes if the prescribed distances have been preserved. If they have not been, and if the guides have not marched upon the point indicated, the column is put again in march, in order to correct their distances and direction.

### To form line on the left.

The squadron being in column with distance, right in front, to form it in line on its left flank, the first captain commands:

- |                                 |                        |
|---------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. <i>Left into line wheel.</i> | 4. <i>Right—DRESS.</i> |
| 2. MARCH.                       | 5. FRONT.              |
| 3. HALT.                        |                        |

At the first command, the particular guide of the right moves upon the prolongation of the direction of the guides of the column, at the distance of the front of a platoon, facing the side towards which the line will be formed.

At the command MARCH, the squadron wheels into line, the trooper on the left flank of each platoon serving as pivot, and turning upon his own ground.

The first captain commands HALT, the moment the marching flanks have nearly completed their movement, and then *right—DRESS.*

At this command, all the platoons align themselves.

The squadron being aligned, the first captain commands FRONT.

During the wheel, the particular guide of the left resumes his place in line.

The first captain, after having commanded *left into line wheel*, assures himself, before commanding MARCH, that the particular guide of the right is exactly upon the direction of the guides of the column.

Immediately after commanding HALT, he moves rapidly to the right flank of the squadron, to observe that the pivots execute their movements properly, and that the officers and troopers align themselves correctly.

The particular guide, who moves upon the prolongation of the guides of the column, should take rather too much ground than not enough. The conductor of the marching flank of the leading platoon should align himself upon this guide, without endeavouring to approach him.

To form the squadron in column with distance, *left in front*, the first captain commands: 1. *Platoons left wheel*; 2. MARCH; 3. HALT; which is executed as prescribed, when *right in front*, but by inverse means.

To march in column with distance, *left in front*, the first captain commands: 1. *Column forward*; 2. MARCH; 3. *Guide right*; which is executed as prescribed, when the column has the *right in front*.

The changes of direction by successive wheels, and the individual oblique march, when the column has the *left in front*, are executed on the same principles as when the *right* is in front; except, that in the changes of direction, it is the principal guide of the *left* who marks the point of the wheel, placing himself as has been prescribed for the principal guide of the *right*, when the *right* is in front.

The squadron marching in column with distance, *left in front*, it is made *to break by fours, by twos, and by file, to form twos, fours, and platoons*, at the same gait, or



doubling the gait, following the principles prescribed when the right is in front, but by inverse means.

To break by fours, twos, &c., the first captain commands: 1. *By fours (or by twos, or by file) from the left*; 2. MARCH.

The squadron marching in column with distance, left in front, to face it in the opposite direction, the same principles are followed as when the right is in front, but by inverse means.

The squadron marching in column with distance, left in front, to halt it, conform to the principles prescribed when the right is in front.

The squadron being in column with distance, left in front, to form it in line on the right, the first captain commands: 1. *Right into line wheel*; 2. MARCH; 3. HALT; 4. *Left—DRESS*; 5. FRONT.

## To break by the right to march to the left.

The squadron being in line, the first captain commands:

1. *Platoons break by the right—to march to the left.*

2. MARCH.

At the first command, the chief of the first platoon commands; 1. *Platoon forward*; 2. *Guide left.*

At the command MARCH, repeated by the chief of the first platoon, this platoon marches 10 paces to the front, turns to the left, and moves forward at the commands: 1. *Left—TURN*; 2. FORWARD.

The chief of the second platoon, and successively those of the third and fourth, command: 1. *Platoon*

*forward*; 2. *Guide left*; when the chief of the platoon on their right commands MARCH; and they command MARCH, when the chief of that platoon, after having turned to the left, commands: FORWARD.

## To form line to the right by inversion.

The squadron marching in open column, right in front, to form it in line upon its right flank by inversion, the first captain changes the guide; for this purpose, he commands :

### *Guide right.*

The second captain passes by the rear of the column to the side opposite to the guides; the first captain passes by the head of the column to the side of the new guides, rectifies their direction, then halts the column and commands :

- |   |                       |
|---|-----------------------|
| 1. <i>By inversion right into line wheel.</i> |                       |
| 2. MARCH.                                     | 4. <i>Left—DRESS.</i> |
| 3. HALT.                                      | 5. FRONT.             |

Which is executed as prescribed, but by inverse means, as in forming line on the left.

During the movement, the particular guide of the left places himself on the right of the fourth platoon, and the particular guide of the right, who moves on the prolongation of the new guides of the column, remains on the left of the first platoon.

To put the squadron again in column, right in front, the first captain commands: 1. *Platoons left wheel*; 2. MARCH; 3. HALT (or FORWARD); 4. *Guide left*.

The first captain passes to the side of the guides, the second captain passes to the opposite side.

The squadron may also be put in line in natural order, by wheeling the platoon *to the left* (or *to the right*) *about*. The second captain follows the marching flank of the platoon behind which he is placed.

The squadron being in line, it is broken by the left to march to the right, on the principles prescribed, but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Platoons break by the left—to march to the right*; 2. MARCH.

The squadron marching in column with distance, left in front, it is formed in line on its left flank by inversion, (after having changed the guide and halted the column,) on the principles prescribed, but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *By inversion left into line wheel*; 2. MARCH; 3. HALT; 4. *Right—DRESS*; 5. FRONT.

To put the squadron again in column, left in front, the first captain commands: 1. *Platoon right wheel*; 2. MARCH; 3. HALT (OR FORWARD); 4. *Guide right*.

The squadron may also be put in natural order, by wheeling the platoons *to the right* (or *left*) *about*.

To break to the rear by the right to  
march to the left

The squadron being in line, the first captain commands:

1. *Platoons break by the right to the rear—to march to the left*.

2. MARCH.

At the first command, the chief of the first platoon commands: *Platoon right-about wheel*.

At the command MARCH, repeated by the chief of the first platoon, this platoon executes its wheel to the *right-about*; when nearly terminated, its chief commands: 1. FORWARD; 2. *Guide left*; and after marching 10 paces straight forward, he commands: 1. *Right—TURN*; 2. FORWARD.

The chief of the second platoon, and successively those of the third and fourth, command: *Platoon right-about wheel*, when the chief of the platoon on their right commands MARCH, and they command MARCH, when that platoon has passed over three-fourths of its first wheel.

### To form on right into line.

The squadron marching in column with distance, right in front, to form it in line on the prolongation and in advance of its right flank, the first captain commands:

- |                               |                        |
|-------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. <i>On right into line.</i> | 3. <i>Guide right.</i> |
| 2. MARCH.                     | 4. FRONT.              |

At the first command, the chief of the first platoon commands, *Right*.

At the command MARCH, he commands, TURN; the platoon turns to the right and moves forward at the command FORWARD; when it has marched 30 paces, its chief commands HALT, and then *Right—DRESS*.

The other platoons continue to march forward, without approaching the line; as soon as each one arrives abreast of the fourth file from the left of the platoon which should be on its right, its chief commands: 1. *Right—TURN*; 2. FORWARD; this

platoon then directs itself towards the place it is to occupy in line, and on arriving abreast of the file-closers, its chief commands **HALT**, and then *Right—DRESS*.

The squadron being aligned, the first captain commands, **FRONT**.

To form on left into line by inversion.

The squadron marching in column with distance, right in front, to form it in line upon the prolongation and in advance of its left flank, the first captain commands :

1. *By inversion on left into line.*
2. **MARCH.**
3. *Guide left.*
4. **FRONT.**

At the first command the chief of the first platoon commands *Left*.

At the command **MARCH**, he commands **TURN** ; the platoon turns to the left, and moves forward at the command **FORWARD** ; when it has marched 30 paces, its chief commands, **HALT**, and then *Left—DRESS*.

The other platoons continue to march forward, without approaching the line ; as each platoon arrives abreast of the fourth file from the right of the platoon which should be on its left, its chief commands : 1. *Left—TURN* ; 2. **FORWARD** ; this platoon directs itself towards the place it is to occupy in line, and on arriving abreast of the file-closers, its chief commands, **HALT**, and then *Left—DRESS*.

The squadron being aligned, the first captain commands : FRONT.

The squadron being in line, it is broken by the left to the rear to march to the right, on the principles prescribed, but by inverse means, at the commands—1. *Platoons break by the left to the rear—to march to the right* ; 2. MARCH.

The squadron marching in column with distance, left in front, to form it in line on the prolongation and in advance of its left flank, follow the principles prescribed, but by inverse means, at the commands : 1. *On left into line* ; 2 MARCH ; 3. *Guide left* ; 4. FRONT.

The squadron marching in column with distance, left in front, to form it in line upon the prolongation and in advance of its right flank, conform to the principles prescribed, but by inverse means, at the commands—1. *By inversion on right into line* ; 2. MARCH ; 3. *Guide right* ; 4. FRONT.

## To break by platoons to the front.

The squadron being in line, the first captain commands :

1. *By platoons to the front.\**
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide left.*

At the first command, the chief of the first platoon commands : *Platoon forward*, and the chiefs of the three other platoons : *Platoon right half-wheel*.

At the command MARCH, repeated by these offi-

---

\*The words "to the front," are superfluous ; it is better to command : *By platoons*, MARCH, *Guide left*.

cers, the first platoon moves forward ; its chief repeats the indication of the guide.

Each of the other chiefs of platoon, when their *half-wheel* to the right is executed, commands : 1. FORWARD ; 2. *Guide left*, and then marches straight forward. When the left of his platoon arrives in the direction of the platoon which precedes, he commands : 1. *Left half-wheel* ; 2. MARCH ; 3. FORWARD, in order to enter the column.

The first captain does not announce the guide until the first platoon has broken to the front ; and he gives the guide a point of direction.

### To form front into line.

The squadron being in column with distance, right in front, to form it in line upon the head of the column, the first captain commands :

- |                            |                        |
|----------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. <i>Front into line.</i> | 3. <i>Guide right.</i> |
| 2. MARCH.                  | 4. FRONT.              |

At the first command, the chief of the first platoon commands : *Platoon forward*, and the chiefs of the three other platoons command : *Platoon left half-wheel*.

At the command MARCH, repeated by these officers, the first platoon moves forward ; its chief repeats the indication of the guide, and when it has marched 30 paces, he commands : 1. HALT ; 2. *Right—DRESS*.

Each of the other chiefs of platoon, when the *left half wheel* is executed, commands : 1. FORWARD ;

2. *Guide right*, and marches straight forward. When the right of his platoon arrives opposite the left of the platoon which precedes, he commands: 1. *Right half wheel*; 2. FORWARD; and when he arrives abreast of the file-closer: 1. HALT; 2. *Right—DRESS*.

The squadron being aligned, the first captain commands: FRONT.

This formation is executed in the same manner, when the column is on the march; in this case, the chief of the first platoon, continuing to march on, does not command *platoon forward*, nor MARCH, but repeats the indication of the guide.

The squadron being in line, it is broken by the left by platoons to march to the front, on the principles prescribed, but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *By the left—by platoons to the front*; 2. MARCH; 3. *Guide right*.\*

The squadron being in column with distance, left in front, it is formed in line on the head of column, following the principles just prescribed, but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Front into line*; 2. MARCH; 3. *Guide left*; 4. FRONT.

This formation is executed, when the column is marching, as prescribed above.

To break by platoons to the right, and to move forward after the wheel.

The squadron being in line, the first captain commands:

- |                                  |                        |
|----------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. <i>Platoons right wheel</i> . | 3. FORWARD.            |
| 2. MARCH.                        | 4. <i>Guide left</i> . |

---

\*It is better to command, *By platoons from the left*.



At the first command, the left file of each platoon prepares to step off promptly, and the pivot to turn upon itself.

At the command MARCH, each platoon executes its wheel to the right, following the principles of the wheel on a fixed pivot.

At the third command, the platoons march straight forward.

The first captain commands FORWARD, when the wheels are nearly completed, and gives a point of direction to the guide of the column; he observes that the marching flanks step off at the same instant, wheel and arrive together in column, and that the pivots commence the march together at the command FORWARD.

## To form line to the front by inversion.

The squadron being in open column, right in front, to form line by inversion upon the head of the column, the first captain commands:

- |   |                       |
|---|-----------------------|
| 1. <i>By inversion front into line.</i> | 3. <i>Guide left.</i> |
| 2. MARCH.                               | 4. FRONT.             |

At the first command, the chief of the first platoon commands, *Platoon forward*; and the three other chiefs of platoon command, *Platoon right half wheel*.

At the command MARCH, repeated by these officers, the movement is executed as prescribed for forming front into line, but by inverse means.

This formation is executed in the same manner, when the column is marching; in this case, the chief of the first platoon does not command *platoon forward*, nor MARCH, but repeats the indication of the guide.

The squadron being in line, it is broken by platoons to the left, in order to move forward after the wheel, following the principles prescribed, but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Platoons left wheel*; 2. MARCH; 3. FORWARD; 4. *Guide right*.

The squadron being in column with distance, left in front, to form line by inversion upon the head of the column, follow the principles just prescribed, but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *By inversion front into line*; 2. MARCH; 3. *Guide right*; 4. FRONT.

This formation is executed in the same manner, when the column is marching; in this case, the chief of the first platoon does not command *platoon forward*, nor MARCH, but repeats the indication of the guide.

## To break by platoons to the right, head of column to the left or half left

The squadron being in line, the first captain commands:

1. *Platoons right wheel—head of column to the left or half left*.
2. MARCH.
3. FORWARD.
4. *Guide left*.

At the command MARCH, each platoon executes its wheel *to the right*.

At the third command, the chief of the first platoon commands, 1. *Left—TURN*; 2. FORWARD; the other platoons move on and turn successively at the command of their chiefs, on the ground upon which the first had turned.

The first captain commands, FORWARD, when the wheels are nearly completed, and gives a point of direction.

## To form line faced to the rear, on the rear of the column.

The squadron being in column with distance, right in front, to form line faced to the rear, the first captain commands :

- |                                      |                       |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. <i>Platoons left about wheel.</i> | 4. MARCH.             |
| 2. MARCH.                            | 5. <i>Guide left.</i> |
| 3. <i>Front into line.</i>           | 6. FRONT.             |

At the second command, each platoon executes its wheel *to the left about*.

At the fourth command, the chief of the fourth platoon, which becomes the head of the column, when its wheel is nearly completed, commands: 1. FORWARD; 2. *Guide left*; and when it has marched 30 paces, 1. HALT; 2. *Left—DRESS*.

The chiefs of the other platoons, on completing three-fourths of their wheel, command: 1. FORWARD; 2. *Guide left*; and direct themselves towards the place they are to occupy in line, conforming in other respects to what is prescribed for *front into line*, when the column has its *left in front*.

The first captain commands, *front into line*, in sufficient time to command MARCH. and *Guide left*, when the platoons have completed three-fourths of their wheel.

## To form line faced to the rear, by inversion, on the rear of the column.

The squadron being in column with distance, right in front, and obstacles are presented upon its left flank, to form line faced to the rear, the first captain commands:

- |   |                        |
|---|------------------------|
| 1. <i>Platoons right-about wheel.</i>   | 4. MARCH.              |
| 2. MARCH.                               | 5. <i>Guide right.</i> |
| 3. <i>By inversion front into line.</i> | 6. FRONT.              |

At the second command, each platoon executes its wheel to the *right-about*.

At the fourth command, the chief of the fourth platoon, which becomes the head of the column, when its wheel is nearly completed, commands: 1. FORWARD; 2. *Guide right*; and when it has marched 30 paces, 1. HALT; 2. *Right—DRESS*.

The chief of the other platoons, at three-fourths of the wheel, command: 1. FORWARD; 2. *Guide right*; and direct themselves towards the place they are to occupy in line, conforming, in other respects, to what is prescribed for *by inversion front into line*, when the *left is in front*.

The squadron being in line, to break it by platoons to the left, head of column to the right (or half right), follow the principles prescribed, but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Platoons left wheel—head of column to the right* (or *half right*); 2. MARCH; 3. FORWARD; 4. *Guide right*.

The squadron being in column with distance, left in front, to form line faced to the rear, follow the principles prescribed, but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Platoons right about wheel*; 2. MARCH; 3. *Front into line*; 4. MARCH; 5. *Guide right*; 6. FRONT.

The squadron being in column with distance, left in front, and obstacles are presented on its right flank, to form line faced to the rear, follow the principles prescribed, but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Platoons left-about wheel*; 2. MARCH; 3. *By inversion front into line*; 4. MARCH; 5. *Guide left*; 6. FRONT.

To break by platoons to the right, head of column to the right (or half right.)

The squadron being in line, the first captain commands :

1. *Platoons right wheel—head of column to the right (or half right.)*
2. MARCH.
3. FORWARD.
4. *Guide left.*

At the command MARCH, each platoon executes its wheel *to the right*.

At the third command, the chief of the first platoon commands: 1. *Right—TURN*; 2. FORWARD. The other platoons move on, and turn successively at the command of their chief, on the same ground.

The first captain commands FORWARD, when the wheels are nearly completed :

To form line faced to the rear on the head of the column.

The squadron being in column with distance, right in front, to form line upon the head or the column faced to the rear, the first captain commands :

1. *By inversion front into line.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide left.*

Which is executed as prescribed for *by inversion*

*front into line, right in front*, but without rectifying the alignment.

The squadron being formed, the first captain immediately commands :

- |                                     |                        |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. <i>Platoon left-about wheel.</i> | 4. <i>Right—DRESS.</i> |
| 2. MARCH.                           | 5. FRONT.              |
| 3. HALT.                            |                        |

To form line faced to the rear, by inversion, on the head of the column.

The squadron being in column with distance, right in front, and obstacles are presented on its right flank, to form line upon the head of the column, faced to the rear, the first captain commands :

- |                            |                        |
|----------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. <i>Front into line.</i> | 3. <i>Guide right.</i> |
| 2. MARCH.                  |                        |

Which is executed as prescribed for *front into line, right in front*, but without rectifying the alignment.

The squadron being formed, the first captain immediately commands :

- |                                       |                       |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. <i>Platoons right-about wheel.</i> | 4. <i>Left—DRESS.</i> |
| 2. MARCH.                             | 5. FRONT.             |
| 3. HALT.                              |                       |

The squadron being in line, to break by platoons to the left, head of column to the left or half left, follow the principles prescribed, but by inverse means, at the commands : 1. *Platoons left wheel—head of column to the left (or half-left)*; 2. MARCH; 3. FORWARD; 4. *Guide right.*

The squadron being in column with distance, left in front, to form line upon the head of the column, faced to the rear, follow the principles prescribed, but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *By inversion front into line*; 2. MARCH; 3. *Guide right*; and the squadron being formed, 1. *Platoons right-about wheel*; 2. MARCH; 3. HALT; 4. *Left—DRESS*; 5. FRONT.

The squadron being in column with distance, left in front, and obstacles are presented upon its left flank, to form in line upon the head of the column faced to the rear, follow the principles prescribed, but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Front into line*; 2. MARCH; 3. *Guide left*; and the squadron being formed, 1. *Platoons left-about wheel*; 2. MARCH; 3. HALT; 4. *Right—DRESS*; 5. FRONT.

All these formations faced to the rear are executed in the same manner, when the column is marching.

## Movements by fours, the squadron being in column with distance.

The squadron being in column with distance, right in front, to cause it to gain ground towards its left flank, the first captain commands:

- |                                |                        |
|--------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. <i>By fours left wheel.</i> | 3. FORWARD.            |
| 2. MARCH.                      | 4. <i>Guide right.</i> |

At the command MARCH, the wheels are executed in each rank, by fours, as prescribed in the platoon.

If, instead of moving forward, after having *wheeled to the left by fours*, the first captain wishes to halt the column, he commands: HALT.

To take a direction parallel to the first, and return to column with distance, the first captain commands:

- |                                 |          |
|---------------------------------|----------|
| 1. <i>By fours right wheel.</i> | 3. HALT. |
| 2. MARCH.                       |          |

Which is executed on the same principles, but by inverse means.

If, instead of halting, the first captain wishes the column to march forward, he commands: 1. FORWARD; 2. *Guide left.*

The squadron being in column with distance, right in front, it is caused to gain ground towards its right flank, by the commands: 1. *By fours right wheel*; 2. MARCH; 3. FORWARD; 4. *Guide left*; and to resume the primitive direction at the commands: 1. *By fours left wheel*; 2. MARCH; 3. FORWARD; 4. *Guide left*; (or 3. HALT.)

The squadron being in column with distance, right in front; to cause it to march to the rear, the first captain commands:

- |                                      |                        |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. <i>By fours left about wheel.</i> | 3. FORWARD.            |
| 2. MARCH.                            | 4. <i>Guide right.</i> |

At the command MARCH, the movement is executed, in each rank, by fours.

If, instead of moving forward after the *wheel to the left-about by fours*, the first captain wishes to halt the column, he commands: HALT.

To return to the primitive direction, the first captain commands:

- |                                       |          |
|---------------------------------------|----------|
| 1. <i>By fours right-about wheel.</i> | 3. HALT. |
| 2. MARCH.                             |          |

Which is executed as just prescribed, but by inverse means.



If the first captain wishes the column to march forward, he commands: 1. FORWARD; 2. *Guide left.*

In all the movements *to the left*, and *to the right by fours*, the chiefs of platoon move up abreast of the first rank of their platoons, on the side of the guide.

The first and second captains, the file-closers, and the particular guides of the right and left preserve their places after the *wheel to the left or right by fours* is completed, facing in the new direction.

In the *wheels to the left or right-about by fours*, the chiefs of platoon march behind the centre of their platoons, and the file-closers in front. The particular guide of the right is on the left of his platoon, and the particular guide of the left in front of his.

During the march by flank, the first captain observes that all the ranks march on the same line, regulate their movements towards the side of the guide, and preserve a direction parallel to that of the first platoon; that the troopers keep exactly at the distance of two feet from, and follow those who precede them; he observes that the chiefs of the three last platoons preserve their proper intervals on the side of the guide, so that it may not be necessary to correct distances when the squadron returns to the order in column.

The movements by fours are executed in the same manner, when the column is marching.

The squadron marching in column with distance, left in front, all these movements are executed on the same principles.

## Direct march of the squadron in line.

The troopers, to keep aligned, should feel lightly the boot of the men on the side of the guide; this principle is borne constantly in mind, as it is the only means of being at ease in the ranks, and preserving the individual alignment. With respect to the general alignment, the non-commissioned officers and flank files endeavor to remain aligned between each other; consequently they

will not be required to keep the eyes to the front, but from time to time will give a glance towards the guide, in order to keep on the same line, avoiding to carry the bridle hand in that direction, that there may be no crowding in the ranks.

It has already been stated that the guide of a troop should never put himself in motion suddenly; the guide of the squadron should then commence the gait indicated, slowly, He should also pass gradually from a slow gait to a quick gait, and from a quick to a slow gait; this principle is applicable also to the troopers, who should correct their positions with respect to the alignment by degrees, quickening or slackening the pace.

The direction given to the guide having a great influence upon the regularity of the march, it is necessary that the fixed point should be always chosen in a direction exactly perpendicular to the front of the squadron; if the localities do not permit the particular guide to take intermediate points sufficiently prominent, they are supplied by the file-closers, who are placed facing the guide, at 60 paces apart; they replace themselves on the prolongation of the same direction, as the squadron reaches them.

The first captain, after having announced the guide, moves to the rear, and gives him a fixed point of direction upon which the squadron is to march, and indicates it also to the non-commissioned officer, who replaces the particular guide in the front rank, the latter serving as an intermediate point for the former. The fixed point is also made known to the second captain.

The first captain, if he thinks proper, may charge the second captain with giving the direction.

The point of direction being given, the first captain moves to the centre of his squadron, and faces it, to assure himself that the troopers step off together at the command of execution. He afterwards moves wherever he thinks his presence is most required.

The officers should remain constantly aligned upon the particular guide placed on their line, keep at one pace from the centre of their platoons, and march straight forward; for it is upon their alignment that that of the squadron depends.

The particular guide, who marches abreast of the officers, should march always at an even gait, so as not to oblige the opposite flank to increase or diminish its pace.

This guide, as he advances, should take new intermediate points, to be able to direct himself upon the given points without deviating.

The file-closer, who replaces the particular guide, marches so that the latter may conceal from him the given point of direction. He should keep the head of his horse constantly at one pace from the croup of the horse of the guide, and inform the guide if he departs from the given point, as he is more especially charged with the direction of the march.

During the march, the second captain should superintend the guide charged with the direction, and for this purpose he marches at 10 or 15 paces in rear of this guide.

If, after commencing the march, he perceives that the troopers carry the bridle hand to the left, it is a proof, almost certain, that the point of direction is to the left of the perpendicular line; if, on the contrary, the troopers are obliged to open to the right, it is an evidence that the point of direction is to the right of the perpendicular line: the second captain then gives a point of direction more to the right or more to the left.

The second captain observes that the rear-rank men are exactly at their proper distance, and that the file-closers march well aligned.

The regularity of the march in line depending much upon the attention which the flank files pay to their

alignment, these files should be at first exercised separately.

The squadron being in line, and correctly aligned, the first captain commands :

- |                                |           |
|--------------------------------|-----------|
| 1. <i>Flank files forward.</i> | 3. MARCH. |
| 2. <i>Guide right.</i>         |           |

At the second command, the particular guide of the right moves up abreast of the chiefs of platoon ; he is immediately replaced by the file-closer of the first platoon.

At the command MARCH, the chiefs of platoon, the flank files, (right and left file of each platoon,) and the particular guides, move straight forward, the flank files preserving between each other the necessary interval, in order to receive the troopers of their platoons, and when they have marched 30 paces, the first captain commands :

- |                        |          |
|------------------------|----------|
| 1. <i>Flank files.</i> | 2. HALT. |
|------------------------|----------|

At the command HALT, the chiefs of platoon, the flank files, and the particular guides, halt.

The first captain, after being assured that the flank files have marched in a direction perpendicular, and upon a line parallel to the front of the squadron, commands :

- |                             |           |
|-----------------------------|-----------|
| 1. <i>Squadron forward.</i> | 3. MARCH. |
| 2. <i>Guide right.</i>      |           |

At the command MARCH, the flank files and the squadron move forward.

The flank files and the squadron having marched correctly in the given direction, to halt them, the first captain commands :

1. *Squadron.*

2. HALT.

At the command HALT, the squadron and the flank files halt.

To cause the platoons to re-enter their places, the first captain, after giving notice to the flank files to stand fast, commands :

1. *Squadron forward.*

2. MARCH.

And when at one pace from the flank files, he commands :

1. *Squadron.*

3. *Right—DRESS.*

2. HALT.

4. FRONT.

At the second command, the troopers halt.

At the third command, the particular guide and the file-closer, who replaced him in the front rank of the squadron, resume their places in the line; the troopers return to their intervals together, and dress to the right.

The squadron being aligned, the first captain commands, FRONT.

This exercise having been executed several times at the *walk*, is repeated at the *trot*.

When the flank files have become habituated to regulate their movements upon each other, the entire squadron is marched in line, first at the *walk*, and progressively at the *trot* and *gallop*.

The squadron being in line, to move forward, the first captain commands:

- |                             |           |
|-----------------------------|-----------|
| 1. <i>Squadron forward.</i> | 3. MARCH. |
| 2. <i>Guide right.</i>      |           |

At the second command, the particular guide and file-closer of the first platoon conform to what is prescribed.

At the command MARCH, the squadron moves forward.

To halt the squadron, the first captain commands:

- |                     |                        |
|---------------------|------------------------|
| 1. <i>Squadron.</i> | 3. <i>Right—DRESS.</i> |
| 2. HALT.            | 4. FRONT.              |

At the second command, the squadron halts.

At the third command, the squadron aligns itself.

The squadron being aligned, the first captain commands, FRONT.

The squadron marching at the *walk*, before passing to the *trot*, the first captain assures himself that the point of direction is good, and that the squadron marches with uniformity and steadiness.

When the squadron marches steadily at the *trot*, it passes to the *gallop*.

The first captain observes that the troopers keep their horses quiet, and do not quicken the gait more than necessary, a common fault in the march at the *gallop*. For this purpose, the chiefs of platoon, the guide and the flank files pay attention to keep their horses at an even and moderate *gallop*.

In the marches at the *trot*, and particularly at the *gallop*, it is necessary to slacken the pace as soon as any disorder is discovered.

To march at the *gallop*, the squadron commences at the *walk*; then passes to the *trot*; the same progression

is observed in order to halt when marching at the *gallop*; the squadron is then exercised in moving off from a halt at the *trot* and at the *gallop*, and in halting when marching at these gaits.

The squadron is exercised in marching with the *guide on the left*, as with the *guide on the right*.

## Counter-march.

The squadron being in line, to face it in the opposite direction, the first captain commands:

1. *Counter-march by the right flank.*
2. *By file to the right.*
3. MARCH.

At the second command, the chiefs of platoon turn to the *right*, the chief of the first platoon placing himself in front of his first file; the file-closers turn *to the left*, and pass to the left of the squadron; those of the second division abreast of the front rank, the second captain on their left; those of the first division abreast of the rear rank.

The particular guide of the right places himself promptly behind the particular guide of the left, facing to the rear, the croup of his horse at 6 paces from the rear rank.

At the command MARCH, the movement is executed as prescribed in the platoon.

When the first file is at 2 paces from the particular guide who indicates the place where it is to form, the first captain commands:

- |           |                         |
|-----------|-------------------------|
| 1. FRONT. | 3. <i>Right</i> —DRESS. |
| 2. HALT.  | 4. FRONT.               |

The file-closers follow the movement, and resume their places as they arrive at them.

After having commanded MARCH, the first captain moves rapidly to the flank by which the movement is executed, in order to direct the head of the column, and to re-form the squadron to the rear upon a line parallel to the one it at first occupied.

At the commands HALT and *right*—DRESS, the second captain *turns-about* and places himself abreast of the rear rank to align it.

The squadron being aligned, the first captain commands, FRONT. At this command, the chiefs of platoon face to the front by a turn *to the left*.

The counter-march should be executed generally at the *trot*. For this purpose, after the second command, the first captain indicates the gait.

This movement is executed by the left flank, following the same principles, but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Counter-march by the left flank*; 2. *By file to the left*; 3. MARCH; and 1. FRONT; 2. HALT; 3. *Left—DRESS*; 4. FRONT.

## Wheelings.

The principles prescribed for the platoon, are applicable to the squadron wheeling on a fixed or a moveable pivot. The execution of it becomes more difficult as the front is extended; it requires on the part of officers and troopers, a particular and constant attention.

During the wheel, the chiefs of platoon keep at the centre of their platoons, and correctly aligned upon each other, keeping their horses upon the arc of circle more or less great, in proportion to their distance from the pivot. The chief of the platoon on which the wheel is made,



regulates himself upon the chief of the platoon on the marching flank, observing to move progressively, as the latter advances in the new direction.

The chief of the platoon on the marching flank, describes his circle so as neither to move from, nor approach the other chiefs of platoon.

The files on the flanks of platoons dress upon each other, all observing the progression of the marching flank, and keeping upon the arc they should describe.

The particular guide placed on the side of the pivot is the actual pivot, although he is not counted in the rank.

In every kind of wheel, the marching flank of a squadron should measure with accuracy its arc of circle; if it is too great, the files are made to open and disunite, and the wheel becomes longer; if it is too small, the files are crowded, there is confusion, and the pivot is forced.

### To wheel on a fixed pivot.

The squadron is exercised in wheeling on a fixed pivot, first at the *walk*, then at the *trot*; also at the *gallop*, when the troopers are confirmed in all the principles.

The squadron being halted and correctly aligned, the first captain commands :

1. *Squadron in circle right wheel.*
2. MARCH.

Which is executed on the principles prescribed for the platoon.

To halt the squadron during the wheel, the first captain commands :

- |                     |                       |
|---------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. <i>Squadron.</i> | 3. <i>Left—DRESS.</i> |
| 2. HALT.            | 4. FRONT.             |

At the first command, the troopers of the rear

rank straighten their horses, and resume their places behind their file-leaders.

At the second command, all the troopers halt.

At the third command, the squadron dresses to the left.

The squadron being aligned, the first captain commands, **FRONT**.

If, instead of halting, the first captain wishes to resume the direct march, he commands :

1. **FORWARD**.

2. *Guide left*.

At the first command, the troopers of the rear rank straighten their horses, and place themselves behind their file-leaders, and the whole squadron moves forward at the gait in which it was marching before the wheel.

The squadron is halted, if the slightest confusion arises during the wheel ; the first captain explains the origin of the fault, and the means of repairing it.

When the troopers begin to understand these movements, the whole circle is passed over several times without halting.

If the first captain wishes to halt the squadron during the wheel, it is necessary, particularly in the quick gaits, to command *squadron* in sufficient time to enable the troopers to prepare to halt, and **HALT** when the marching flank is in the act of arriving upon the new direction, so that the pivot may not be required to move.

The squadron wheeling steadily at the *walk*, to pass to the *trot*, the first captain chooses a moment in which the horses are perfectly calm. After one or two turns, the squadron is made to resume the *walk*. The squadron wheeling well at the *trot*, is exercised to wheel at the *gallop*, upon the same principles. After one or two turns, it passes to the *trot*, then to the *walk*.

The troopers being habituated to these movements, are exercised in changing the side of the wheel, without halting. These changes of wheel to both hands are executed at the *walk* and at the *trot*, but never at the *gallop*.

The squadron wheeling to the right, at the *walk* or at the *trot*, the first captain commands:

1. *Squadron in circle left wheel.*                      2. MARCH.

Which is executed as prescribed for the platoon.

The wheels at the *gallop*, and the changes of wheel without halting require much attention on the part of the troopers and non-commissioned officers; the correct execution of these movements depends upon their measuring properly the arc to be passed over, and regulating the rapidity of the gait.

The squadron is afterwards exercised to wheel at the *trot* and at the *gallop*, commencing from a halt, and to halt while wheeling at these gaits.

The squadron being halted, the first captain commands:

- |                     |   |   |  |
|---------------------|---|---|--|
|                     | { | <i>right (or left) wheel.</i>             |  |
| 1. <i>Squadron,</i> |   | <i>right-about (or left-about) wheel.</i> |  |
|                     |   | <i>right-half (or left-half) wheel.</i>   |  |
| 2. MARCH.           |   | 5. <i>Left (or right)—DRESS.</i>          |  |
| 3. <i>Squadron.</i> |   | 6. FRONT.                                 |  |
| 4. HALT.            |   |   |  |

Which is executed as prescribed for the platoon.

The first captain allows sufficient time to elapse between the first and second command, for the troopers to gather their horses, that they may commence the move together.

These movements are executed at the different gaits: but they should not be repeated too frequently at the *gallop*, in order not to fatigue the horses.

To exercise the squadron while marching at the wheels on a fixed pivot, the first captain commands :

1. *Squadron*  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{right (or left) wheel.} \\ \textit{right-about (or left-about) wheel.} \\ \textit{right-half (or left-half) wheel.} \end{array} \right.$
2. MARCH.
3. FORWARD.
4. *Guide left (or guide right).*

The squadron being on the march, to cause it to wheel, doubling the gait, the first captain gives the command *trot* or *gallop* before that of MARCH.

At the command MARCH, the pivot stops short; the marching flank takes the gait indicated.

At the command FORWARD, both move forward at the gait indicated for the wheel.

### To wheel on a moveable pivot.

In the wheels on a moveable pivot, the pivot should describe *an arc of circle of 20 paces*, at the same time slackening the gait; the marching flank increases its gait. The sixth file of the second platoon, which is the middle of the radius of the wheel, preserves the gait at which the squadron was marching. The troopers placed between this file and the pivot diminish proportionally their gait; those placed between this file and the marching flank augment proportionally theirs.

The wheel on a moveable pivot is executed upon the guide, or upon the opposite flank.

After a wheel on a moveable pivot, the guide remains where it was before the wheel, and is given a new point of direction.

The squadron marching in line, to change direction to the right, the first captain commands :

1. *Right*—TURN.

2. FORWARD.

Which is executed as prescribed for the platoon, the pivot describing *an arc of circle of 20 paces.*

When this wheel is executed properly at the *walk*, the marching flank taking the *trot*, it is repeated at the *trot*. the marching flank taking the *gallop*.

To change the direction to the left, the movement is executed on the same principles, but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Left*—TURN; 2. FORWARD.

### Individual oblique march.

The squadron marching in line. to cause it to gain ground towards its right flank, without changing the front of the squadron, the first captain commands:

1. *Right oblique.*

2. MARCH.

To resume the primitive direction, the first captain commands:

FORWARD.

Which is executed as prescribed in the platoon.

The squadron marching in line, it is made to gain ground towards its left flank, without changing the front, on the same principles, but by inverse means. at the commands: 1. *Left oblique*; 2. MARCH; it resumes the primitive direction at the command FORWARD.

During the oblique march, the first captain observes that the chiefs of platoon keep on the same line, preserve between them the same interval, and follow parallel directions in order to preserve the general alignment.

The particular guide who marches abreast of the chiefs of platoon, after having executed a *quarter turn to the right*, moves straight forward.

This movement is executed at the *walk*, or at the *trot*, but never at the *gallop*.

## Oblique march by platoons.

The squadron being in line, to cause it to gain ground towards its right flank, by the oblique march by platoons the first captain commands :

- |                                      |                        |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. <i>Platoons right half-wheel.</i> | 3. FORWARD.            |
| 2. MARCH.                            | 4. <i>Guide right.</i> |

At the command MARCH, each platoon executes its *half-wheel to the right*, on a fixed pivot.

At the third command, each platoon moves forward, conforming to the principles of the direct march.

To cause the squadron to resume the primitive direction, the first captain commands :

- |                                     |                        |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. <i>Platoons left half-wheel.</i> | 3. FORWARD.            |
| 2. MARCH.                           | 4. <i>Guide right.</i> |

Which is executed as just prescribed, but by inverse means.

In the oblique march by platoons, the pivots of the platoons should all halt at the same instant, at the command MARCH, so that all the wheels may terminate at the same time.

During this march, the right guide of the first platoon marches directly upon the point which has been indicated to him. The guides of the other platoons preserve their distances, take for file-leader the fourth trooper from the left of the platoon which precedes them, and keep at two paces from him.

The first captain places himself habitually at two paces outside, and abreast of the front-rank of the second platoon.

The second captain behind the guide of the first platoon, in order to superintend his direction;

The chiefs of platoon at the centre of their platoons. the head of their horses on a line with the boot of the rear-rank man of the platoon which precedes;

The particular guides, and the file-closers, remain at their places in line.

If the squadron is marching, and this movement is executed, the particular guide who marches abreast of the chiefs of platoon. makes a *half-turn to the right*, and then marches straight forward.

The oblique march by platoons is executed at the *walk*, at the *trot*, and at the *gallop*, the squadron being halted or in motion.

The squadron being in line, it is made to gain ground towards its left flank on the same principles, but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Platoons left half-wheel*; 2. MARCH; 3. FORWARD; 4. *Guide left*, and resumes the primitive direction at the commands: 1. *Platoons right half-wheel*; 2. MARCH; 3. FORWARD; 4. *Guide right*.

## Movements by fours.

The squadron being in line, to cause it to gain ground towards its right flank, the first captain commands:

- |                                 |                       |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. <i>By fours right wheel.</i> | 3. FORWARD.           |
| 2. MARCH.                       | 4. <i>Guide left.</i> |

Which is executed as prescribed in the platoon. The chiefs of platoon march on the side of the guide, at one pace from, and abreast of the leading files of their platoons.

The particular guide of the right marches in front of the column, at one pace from the leading

rank of eight, the particular guide of the left behind the last rank of eight of the fourth platoon.

The squadron having wheeled to the right by fours, and being in column, to change direction to the left, the first captain commands :

*Head of column to the left.*

The chief of the first platoon commands: 1. *Left—TURN*; 2. *FORWARD*.

To change direction to the right, the movement is executed on the same principles, but by inverse means, at the command: *Head of column to the right.*

To put the squadron again in line, the first captain commands :

- |                                |                        |
|--------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. <i>By fours left wheel.</i> | 4. <i>Right—DRESS.</i> |
| 2. <i>MARCH.</i>               | 5. <i>FRONT.</i>       |
| 3. <i>HALT.</i>                |                        |

Which is executed as prescribed in the platoon, the particular guides resuming their places in line.

These movements are executed by the left, on the same principles, at the commands: 1. *By fours left wheel*; 2. *MARCH*; 3. *FORWARD*; 4. *Guide right*; and 1. *By fours right wheel*; 2. *MARCH*; 3. *HALT*; 4. *Left—DRESS*; 5. *FRONT*.

The squadron being in line, to cause it to gain ground to the rear, and to face it again to the front.

The squadron being in line, to face it in the opposite direction, the first captain commands :



- |                                       |                       |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. <i>By fours right-about wheel.</i> | 3. FORWARD.           |
| 2. MARCH.                             | 4. <i>Guide left.</i> |

The chiefs of platoon, the file-closers, and the particular guides, *wheel-about* individually and march, the chiefs of platoon behind the centre of their platoons, the file-closers in front, and the particular guides abreast of the rear rank, become the front.

At the fourth command, the file-closer nearest the guide passages to the left, in order to place himself in front of the particular guide; the first captain gives him a point of direction, which is also indicated to the particular guide, who, in this movement, remains on the flank of the squadron.

The squadron is *faced again to the front*, by a movement similar to the one just stated.

*The wheels to the left-about by fours*, are executed on the same principles, but by inverse means.

These movements *by fours* are executed from a halt, and in marching at the *walk* and at the *trot*.

The squadron marching in line, to break it by platoons, to the right, and to form it again in line.

The squadron marching in line, to cause it to gain ground towards its right flank, the first captain commands :

- |                                 |                       |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. <i>Platoons right wheel.</i> | 3. FORWARD.           |
| 2. MARCH.                       | 4. <i>Guide left.</i> |

Which is executed as prescribed, the pivots halting short, and the left file of each platoon stepping out promptly and regulating its movements upon that of the platoon which is in front, so as to arrive together in column.

To put the squadron again in line, the first captain commands :

- |                                |                        |
|--------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. <i>Platoons left wheel.</i> | 3. FORWARD.            |
| 2. MARCH.                      | 4. <i>Guide right.</i> |

The marching flanks regulate their movements upon those of the platoon at the head of the column, so as to arrive together in line.

The second captain gives a point of direction to the particular guide, who moves up on the line of officers, and indicates it also to the file-closer, who replaces him on the flank of the squadron.

These movements are executed on the same principles, when the squadron is marching at the *trot*, and at the *gallop*.

The squadron marching in line, it is made to gain ground towards its left flank, on the same principles, but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Platoons left wheel*; 2. MARCH; 3. FORWARD; 4. *Guide right*; and is put again in line at the commands: 1. *Platoons right wheel*; 2. MARCH; 3. FORWARD; 4. *Guide left*.

The squadron marching in line, to march it to the rear by wheeling the platoons about.

The squadron marching in line, guide right, the first captain commands :

- |                                       |                       |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. <i>Platoons right-about wheel.</i> | 3. FORWARD.           |
| 2. MARCH.                             | 4. <i>Guide left.</i> |

At the command MARCH, the pivots halt short, and turn upon themselves; the marching flanks step off at the same instant, regulating themselves by the right during the first half of the wheel, so as to arrive together in column, and by the left during the second half, so as to arrive together in line. In each platoon, the rear rank and the file-closers carry the hand towards the marching flank, in order to facilitate the movement.

At the third command, the squadron resumes the direct march.

At the fourth command, the particular guide on the side indicated moves up on the line of officers; he is immediately replaced, and a point of direction given.

If, after wheeling about, the first captain wishes to halt the squadron, instead of commanding FORWARD, he commands: 3. HALT; 4. *Left*—DRESS; 5. FRONT.

This movement is executed by the left, on the same principles, but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *Platoons left-about wheel*; 2. MARCH; 3. FORWARD; 4. *Guide right*.

In these movements, the particular guide of the right *turns to the right*, moves straight forward the extent of the front of a platoon, and *turns again to the right*, in order to place himself on the left of the squadron. The particular guide of the left executes the same movement, to place himself on the right of the squadron.

These movements are executed from a halt, and in marching at the *trot* and at the *gallop*.

The squadron marching in line, to break it to the front by platoons, and to reform it.

The first captain commands :

1. *By platoons to the front.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide left.*

Which is executed as prescribed in breaking from a halt, except that the chief of the first platoon, continuing to march on, does not command *platoon forward*, nor MARCH, but repeats the indication of the guide.

This movement is executed in the same manner, at the *trot* and at the *gallop*.

The squadron marching in column with distance, right in front, to form it at the same gait, the first captain commands :

1. *Form squadron.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide right.*

The squadron marching at the *trot*, this movement is executed on the same principles, except that the chief of the first platoon commands: 1. *Walk*; 2. MARCH, the right particular guide, at the command *guide right*, moves up on the line of officers, and each of the other chiefs of platoon commands: 1. *Walk*; 2. MARCH; on arriving in line. The movement is executed in the same manner when the column is at the *gallop*, each platoon passing successively to the *trot*.

The squadron marching in line, it is broken by the

left, on the same principles, but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *By the left—by platoons to the front*;\* 2. MARCH; 3. *Guide right*. It is re-formed at the same gait at the commands: 1. *Form squadron*; 2. MARCH; 3. *Guide left*.

The squadron marching in line, to break it to the front by platoons, doubling the gait, and to re-form it.

The first captain commands:

1. *By platoons to the front—trot.*      3. *Guide left.*
2. MARCH.

At the first command, the chief of the first platoon commands, *Trot*; and those of the three other platoons command, *Platoon right half-wheel—trot*.

At the command MARCH, repeated by these officers, the movement is executed as prescribed in breaking from the line halted.

The squadron marching in line at the *trot*, the movement is executed at the *gallop* on the same principles.

The squadron marching in column with distance, right in front, to form it, doubling the gait, the first captain commands:

1. *Form squadron—trot.*      3. *Guide right.*
2. MARCH.

At the first command, the chiefs of the three

---

\* It is better to command. 1. "*By platoons from the left*; 2. *March*; 3. *Guide right*."

last platoons command, *Platoon left half-wheel—trot.*

At the command MARCH, repeated by the chiefs of the three last platoons, the first platoon continues to march straight forward at the *walk*, and its chief repeats the indication of the guide.

The three other platoons execute their *half-wheel to the left at the trot*, on a fixed pivot.

The half-wheels being nearly terminated, the chiefs of these platoons command, 1. FORWARD; 2. *Guide right*; they move straight forward, and as soon as the right file of their platoon is in the direction of the left file of the platoon which precedes, they command, 1. *Right half-wheel*; 2. MARCH; 3. FORWARD; and then, *walk*; in sufficient time to command MARCH, when their platoon arrives in line; then the troopers resume the *walk*, and align themselves in marching.

Each platoon, after its *half-wheel to the left*, move straight forward on the point where it is to turn, and without obliquing towards the platoons which precede it.

The second captain gives a point of direction to the particular guide of the right, who moves upon the line of officers at the command, *guide right*.

The column being at the *trot*, this movement is executed at the commands, 1. *Form squadron—gallop*; 2. MARCH; 3. *Guide right*; the first platoon continues to march at the *trot*, and the three last platoons take the *gallop*, and resume the *trot* when they arrive on the line of the first.

When the column is at the *gallop*, the squadron is formed at the same gait as prescribed, each platoon passing successively to the *trot*.

The squadron marching in line, it is broken by the left by platoons, doubling the gait, on the principles prescribed, but by inverse means, at the commands,\* 1. *By the left—by platoons to the front—trot (or gallop)*; 2. MARCH; 3. *Guide right*. The squadron is re-formed, doubling the gait, at the commands, 1. *Form squadron—trot (or gallop)*; 2. MARCH; 3. *Guide left*.

## Passage of obstacles.

The squadron marching in line, to execute the passage of obstacles, the first captain commands:

1. *Obstacle*.    2. *First platoon*.    3. HALT.

At the command HALT, repeated by the chief of the first platoon, this platoon halts, and its chief immediately commands, 1. *Left oblique—trot*; 2. MARCH; and this platoon doubles upon the second.

When the platoon which has obliques is in rear of the one upon which it has doubled, its chief commands, 1. FORWARD; 2. *Guide right*; 3. *Walk*; 4. MARCH.

To cause the platoon which has obliques to return to its place, the first captain commands:

1. *First platoon*.    2. INTO LINE.

At the command INTO LINE, the chief of the platoon commands, 1. *Right oblique—trot*; 2. MARCH; when opposite the ground the platoon is to occupy, he commands, 1. FORWARD; 2. *Guide left*; 3. *Walk*; and when the platoon is in line, 4. MARCH.

---

\* 1. *By platoons from the left—Trot (or gallop)*; 2. MARCH; 3. *Guide right*.

The chief of the platoon commands FORWARD, a little before its left file has passed beyond the right file of the platoon on which it is to form.

If the guide is to the right, as soon as the first platoon has re-entered upon the line, the first captain indicates the new guide; he does the same as soon as the fourth platoon is in line, if the guide is to the left.

The second platoon executes the same movement, in obliquing to the right behind the first platoon; the third in obliquing to the left behind the fourth, and the fourth in obliquing to the right behind the third; each platoon should always double upon that with which it forms the division.

The chiefs of platoon give the prescribed commands rapidly, and cause the degree of obliquity to be a little increased, that the movement may be more promptly executed, and to enable the platoons to take their distances.

All these movements are executed first at the *walk*. When the squadron is at the *trot*, the movement is executed at the *gallop*.

The squadron marching in line, to execute the passage of obstacle, upon the head of each platoon, the first captain commands:

1. *In each platoon—by fours (or by twos)—trot.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide right.*

At the first command, the chiefs of platoon command: *By fours (or by twos)—trot.*

At the command MARCH, repeated by these officers, each platoon breaks by fours as prescribed, the chiefs of platoon march at the head of their platoons; the particular guide of the right, who marches on the line of officers, places himself on the right of the chief of the first platoon; the particular guide



of the left, in rear of the fourth platoon, and the file-closers upon the right flank of their platoons.

Each platoon being thus broken in column, should preserve a direction parallel to that of the one which is the guide, keeping on the same line, and always at the distance of its front, to be able at any moment to re-form in line.

If the ground requires a platoon to deviate from its direction, it should return to it as soon as possible, and recover its proper distance with respect to the side towards the guide.

In marching thus, the first captain may cause the squadron to break *by twos* and *by file*, observing to *form twos* and *fours* as soon as the ground will permit.

These movements are executed when the squadron is marching at the *trot* or at the *gallop*.

This formation being only momentary, the guide remains on the side it was during the march in line, that the base of the alignment may not be changed.

To re-form the squadron, each platoon having broken by *fours* or by *twos* at the *trot*, right in front, the first captain commands :

1. *Form platoons.*

3. *Guide right.*

2. MARCH.

At the first command, the chiefs of platoon command : *Form platoon.*

At the command MARCH, repeated by these officers, each platoon forms as prescribed in the platoon drill.

If the ground does not permit all the platoons to form at once, the one before which the obstacle is presented, forms in rear of the other platoon of

its division, and retakes its place in line as soon as practicable.

These movements are executed by the left, on the same principles, but by inverse means, at the commands: 1. *In each platoon—by fours (or by twos)—from the left—trot*; 2. MARCH; 3. *Guide left*; and to re-form the squadron, 1. *Form platoons*; 2. MARCH; 3. *Guide left*.

---

## CHARGE.—RALLYING.—SKIRMISHING.

---

### Charge.

In the charge, as in every other direct march, it is important to keep the horses straight. As soon as any confusion is observed, it is necessary to halt and recommence the movement.

The squadron is exercised at the charge: 1. *In line*; 2. *In column*; 3. *As foragers*.

*The charge in line* is executed by the squadron when in line; it should be as short as possible, so as to arrive in good order, and without fatiguing the horses.

*The charge in column* is executed by the squadron broken in column with distance.

To execute *the charge as foragers*, all the troopers of the squadron disperse, and direct themselves each upon the point he wishes to attack, observing not to lose sight of their officers, who charge with them.

The line upon which the squadron should re-form after the charge is marked out, as prescribed, (see Platoon Drill,) by two non-commissioned officers, who are file-closers, and who are placed 240 paces in front, facing, and at a distance from each other equal to the front of the squadron.

Non-commissioned officers are also placed opposite the right flank at the different points where the changes of gait should take place.

If the guide is on the left, they are placed opposite the left flank.

The squadron being in line, the first captain orders the sabres to be drawn, and the platoons to charge one after another, commencing by the right.

For this purpose, the first captain advances 240 paces to the front, taking a trumpeter with him; and when he wishes the movement to commence, he causes a signal to be given.

The first platoon then moves forward at the commands of its chief. It passes successively from the *walk* to the *trot*, from the *trot* to the *gallop*, and from the *gallop* to the *charge*.

The three other platoons break in their turn, when the preceding one has halted.

To execute the charge by the entire squadron, the first captain places himself in front of the centre of his squadron, and commands :

- |                                  |           |
|----------------------------------|-----------|
| 1. <i>Squadron forward.</i>      | 3. MARCH. |
| 2. <i>Guide right (or left).</i> |           |

When the squadron has marched forward 20 paces, he commands :

- |                 |           |
|-----------------|-----------|
| 1. <i>Trot.</i> | 2. MARCH. |
|-----------------|-----------|

At 60 paces farther, he commands :

- |                   |           |
|-------------------|-----------|
| 1. <i>Gallop.</i> | 2. MARCH. |
|-------------------|-----------|

At 80 paces farther, he commands :

#### CHARGE.

At this command, repeated by the chiefs of platoon, the troopers take the position of *raise sabre*.

When the squadron, after having passed over 60 paces at the charge, is 20 paces from the non-commissioned officers who mark the line, the first captain commands:

- |                      |                        |
|----------------------|------------------------|
| 1. <i>Attention.</i> | 4. <i>Right—DRESS.</i> |
| 2. <i>Squadron.</i>  | 5. <b>FRONT.</b>       |
| 3. <b>HALT.</b>      |                        |

At the command *attention*, repeated by the chiefs of platoon, the troopers prepare to slacken the pace, and carry the sabre to the shoulder.

At the command *squadron*, the chiefs of platoon command, *Platoon*, and the troopers pass to the *trot*.

At the command **HALT**, repeated by the chiefs of platoon, the troopers halt.

At the command *right—DRESS*, they align themselves to the right.

The squadron being aligned, the first captain commands, **FRONT**.

To assure himself that the principles prescribed are exactly followed, the first captain sometimes places himself in front of the squadron, facing it, and at the distance that will enable him to remark better the faults. In this case he is replaced on the line of officers by the second captain, who gives the commands.

When the squadron executes the charge correctly, instead of halting when the charge is finished, the first captain commands:

- |                      |                 |                  |
|----------------------|-----------------|------------------|
| 1. <i>Attention.</i> | 2. <i>Trot.</i> | 3. <b>MARCH.</b> |
|----------------------|-----------------|------------------|

At these commands, repeated by the chiefs of platoon, the squadron passes to the *trot*, and at 20 paces beyond the line marked out, he commands:

1. *First (or fourth) platoon—as foragers.*
2. MARCH.

At these commands, repeated by the chief of the platoon designated, the platoon moves forward at the *gallop*, and disperses as foragers. A trumpeter follows the chief of the platoon.

The squadron follows this platoon at the *trot*; when it has passed over 150 paces, the first captain causes the *rally* to be sounded. At this signal, repeated by the trumpeter of the platoon dispersed as foragers, the latter rally upon the squadron, as prescribed in the Platoon Drill; and when three-fourths of the platoon have rallied and are in line, the first captain commands :

- |                      |            |
|----------------------|------------|
| 1. <i>Attention.</i> | 3. MARCH.  |
| 2. <i>Gallop.</i>    | 4. CHARGE. |

The squadron executes again the charge in line; the troopers, who have not been able to rally, charge upon the flanks of the squadron.

To exercise the troopers in rallying upon any point whatever, the first captain, during the march at the *trot*, causes the squadron to gain ground towards one of its flanks, by executing a *half-wheel to the right* or *to the left*, or by *breaking by platoons to the right* or *to the left*, and reforming immediately in a new direction.

The squadron marching in column with distance, at the *trot*, the first captain commands :

- |                          |           |
|--------------------------|-----------|
| 1. <i>To the charge.</i> | 2. MARCH. |
|--------------------------|-----------|

At the first command, the chief of the first platoon commands, *Gallop*.

At the command MARCH, repeated by the chief of the first platoon, this platoon commences the *gallop*.

The other platoons follow at the *trot*, each taking the *gallop*, when the platoon which precedes is at the distance of 50 paces.

When the first platoon has passed over 80 paces at the *gallop*, its chief commands, CHARGE.

At this command, the platoon executes the charge; and when it has passed over 60 paces, its chief causes it to pass to the *trot* by the commands: 1. *Attention*; 2. *Trot*; 3. MARCH.

The other platoons pay attention to the movements of the platoon which precedes them, so as to change the gait in time, and to resume their ordinary distance; the first captain halts the column when he thinks proper.

These charges are executed, each platoon taking in its turn the head of the column.

The squadron marching in column with distance, at the *trot*, the first captain commands:

1. *First Platoon*—as foragers.
2. MARCH.

At the command MARCH, repeated by the chief of the first platoon, this platoon disperses as foragers. The squadron continues to march at the *trot*, and when it has passed over 100 or 150 paces, the first captain causes the *rally* to be sounded.

At this signal, the platoon rallies and re-forms at the rear of the column, or at its place in line, if the squadron has been put in line.

## Rallying.

"To give the troopers the habit of rallying promptly, after having been dispersed as foragers, the first captain

places the squadron at the extremity of the ground ; and after giving notice to the files on the flank of platoons, the file-closers and the trumpeters, to remain upon the line with him, he causes the *disperse* to be sounded. At this signal, the troopers disperse and charge as foragers ; when they are at the distance of 150 or 200 paces, the first captain causes the *rally* to be sounded.

The first captain observes that the troopers disperse without confusion ; that, in rallying, they direct themselves to the right and to the left, outside of the flanks of the squadron, in order to unmask promptly the front of the squadron, and to re-form, passing by the rear.

When the troopers rally without confusion, this movement is repeated without requiring the flank files, &c., to remain on the line of the squadron.

At the signal to *disperse*, the squadron disperses in every direction to the front.

When the squadron is dispersed, the first captain causes the *rally* to be sounded.

At this signal, the officers, the non-commissioned officers, and the troopers, rejoin rapidly ; the officers align themselves promptly upon the first captain, and the non-commissioned officers mark immediately the flanks of the platoons.

As soon as the first captain has formed two-thirds of the squadron, he moves forward, charges again, and halts.

When the squadron is dispersed as foragers, the first captain should sometimes establish himself *to the right* or *to the left* of the direction followed by the troopers, and then order the *rally* to be sounded, to accustom them to rally upon any point he may select.

These movements are first executed at the *trot*, and then at the *gallop*.

Light cavalry should be particularly exercised in *charging as foragers* and in *rallying*.

## Skirmishing.

When the squadron is in sight of the skirmishers, the first captain orders no signal except the rally. The chief of the skirmishers observes the movements of the squadron he covers, and conforms to them as soon as practicable, requiring his trumpeter to sound the necessary signals.

When the squadron changes front, the chief of the skirmishers moves upon the new front, unless the first captain gives orders to the contrary.

If the squadron is out of sight of the skirmishers, the first captain causes the signals which correspond to the movements he executes to be sounded, in order to give notice to the chief of the skirmishers, who conforms to them as soon as practicable.

The trumpeter who follows the chief of the skirmishers should give the signals only upon the order of that officer. The skirmishers should execute their movements only by the signals of the trumpeter who accompanies the officer who commands them.

With respect to the signals, as well as to commence and to cease firing, the troopers conform to what is prescribed in the Platoon.

When several platoons act as skirmishers, the firing is commenced by the right of each platoon.

When a squadron is acting as skirmishers, the first captain is always followed by a trumpeter. The others are placed several steps in rear of the line of skirmishers, at equal distances from the centre to the extremities, in order to repeat as soon as possible the signals given by the trumpeter of the first captain.

The squadron being in line, the first captain commands:

1. *First (or fourth) platoon—as skirmishers.*
2. MARCH.

At the first command, the chief of the first platoons orders the sabres to be returned, the holsters



to be uncovered, and the arms to be loaded; he then commands: 1. *Platoon forward*; 2. *Guide right*; 3. *Trot*.

At the command MARCH, repeated by the chief of the platoon, this platoon moves forward. After marching 100 paces to the front, the chief of the platoon commands: 1. *Six files from right (or from left)—as skirmishers*; 2. MARCH; 3. *Guide right (or guide left)*; which is executed as prescribed in the Platoon.

When the first captain wishes the skirmishers to re-enter the squadron, he causes the *rally* to be sounded.

At this signal, the chief of the skirmishers rallies his platoon, as prescribed in the Platoon, and then rejoins the squadron at the *gallop*, directing himself upon one of the flanks to resume his place in line.

When the first captain wishes to relieve a platoon which is skirmishing, the chief of the new platoon, after causing the arms to be loaded, moves forward upon the reserve of the platoon which is acting as skirmishers. On coming up abreast of it, he orders out 6 files as skirmishers, as has been explained; the remaining 6 files halt and draw sabres.

As soon as the new skirmishers have passed 5 paces beyond those they are to relieve, the latter *turn-about* and rally upon their reserve. The platoon having rallied, is conducted back to the squadron at the *trot*.

When the entire squadron is to act as skirmishers, the first captain orders the sabres to be returned, the holsters to be uncovered, and the arms to be loaded; he then commands:

- |                             |                 |
|-----------------------------|-----------------|
| 1. <i>Squadron forward.</i> | 3. <i>Trot.</i> |
| 2. <i>Guide right.</i>      | 4. MARCH.       |

Having arrived at the point where the reserve is to be established, about 100 paces from the front of the body to be covered, and more if it has been commanded, the first captain commands :

1. *Three first (or three last) platoons as skirmishers.*

2. MARCH.

At the command MARCH, the chief of the platoon which is to support the skirmishers, halts that platoon, and orders the sabres to be drawn. The chiefs of the three other platoons continue to march on, each directing himself by the shortest route, 100 paces to the front towards the part of the line his platoon is to occupy, and having reached it, he disperses his platoon as skirmishers.

The right platoon covers the right of the regiment, and extends 30 or 40 paces beyond it; another platoon covers the centre, and the left platoon covers the left, extending also 30 or 40 paces beyond. The chiefs of these platoons remain 25 paces in rear of the line of skirmishers, and pass over the extent occupied by the troopers of their platoons.

The reserve remains in rear of the centre of the line of skirmishers. If the first captain thinks proper to divide it, each fraction moves upon the point designated, the first commanded by the officer, the other by the non-commissioned officer who was the file-closer.

The squadron having moved forward to cover the regiment, if the first captain wishes only one division to act as skirmishers, he commands: 1. *First (or second)*

*division—as skirmishers*; 4. MARCH; which is executed as prescribed above.

The division which serves as a reserve remains as a single troop, or, if the first captain thinks proper, it is divided into two parts.

The first captain, followed by the first sergeant, keeps habitually half way between the reserve and the skirmishers, to direct the movements.

The second captain, followed by the second sergeant, passes the line, and gives notice to the first captain of every thing that it is important for him to know.

If the first captain wishes to rally the skirmishers upon themselves, he causes *the rally of skirmishers*, No. 6, to be sounded.

At this signal, each platoon rallies as rapidly as possible upon its chief.

If the first captain then wishes to rally the squadron, he moves upon the point where he intends it shall form, and causes the *rally* to be sounded when three-fourths of each platoon has rallied.

At this new signal, the reserve and each platoon of skirmishers move at a *gallop* upon the point where the captain commanding is placed. The troopers, who did not rejoin their platoon when it rallied upon itself, direct themselves towards the squadron.

The squadron being dispersed as skirmishers, if the first captain wishes it to rally immediately, he orders the *rally* to be sounded; at this signal, the officers, the skirmishers and the reserve rally upon the point occupied by the first captain.

The troopers being dispersed as skirmishers, if the first captain wishes them to charge as foragers, he orders them to cease firing, and causes the *disperse* to be sounded.

At this signal, the chiefs of platoon move forward in line, and the skirmishers draw sabres; they charge immediately. The reserve follows at the *trot* or at the *gallop*, as may be necessary.

After the charge: the first captain orders the *rally* to be sounded, when the troopers rally in rear of the reserve.

The skirmishers being rallied by platoons, as prescribed above, if the first captain wishes to charge, he orders the *charge* to be sounded.

At this signal, each chief of platoon conducts his platoon to the charge in good order; the reserve supports the movement at the *trot* or at the *gallop*.

The first captain places himself so as to be able to direct the general movement.

The second captain charges with the platoon nearest to him.

The platoons rally behind the reserve; the first captain moves upon that point at the same time that he orders the rally to be sounded.

If, in a squadron of dragoons, one platoon dismounts to fight on foot, the first captain commands:

1. *First (or fourth) platoon—prepare to fight on foot.*
2. **MARCH.**

At the first command, the chief of the platoon orders the sabres to be returned.

At the command **MARCH**, repeated by the chief of the platoon, this platoon moves forward, having marched 12 paces, the chief of the platoon halts it and commands:

*Prepare to fight—ON FOOT.*

Which is executed as prescribed for dragoons, in the platoon drill.

The platoon being formed on foot, it is conducted to the point it is to defend, and is exercised as light infantry.

The horses without riders will be led in rear of the centre of the squadron.

When the first captain wishes the dismounted platoon to remount, he orders the *rally* to be sounded. At this signal, the chief of this platoon places himself at the point on which he wishes the dragoons to rally, if dispersed as skirmishers, and the rally is executed as prescribed for the dragoons.

The platoon being formed, is conducted by the rear rank to within 12 paces of the ground occupied by their horses, and the chief of this platoon gives the command, *dragoons mount*, which having been executed, it resumes its place in the squadron.

If the first captain wishes a division to dismount, he commands:

*First (or second) division—prepare to fight on foot.*

Which is executed on the principles prescribed for the platoon. The 2d lieutenant commanding the second platoon of the division, remains with the horses of the dismounted men; the 1st lieutenant commands the dismounted dragoons; he forms two platoons which are exercised on the principles prescribed in the drill of the platoon.

If the whole squadron dismounts to fight on foot, the first captain commands:

*Prepare to fight—ON FOOT.*

Which is executed by the whole squadron, as prescribed for the platoon.

The second captain and an officer remain with the horses of the dismounted men: the first captain moves his dismounted squadron upon the point it is to defend, and conforms to what is prescribed in the light infantry tactics.

The squadron remounts by the commands and on the principles prescribed for the platoon.

The right file of the squadron remains mounted.

The particular guides dismount, and also the two trumpeters who follow the first captain and the lieutenant commanding the skirmishers.

The file-closers who remain mounted take their places in front of their platoons.

The horses of the officers who dismount are held as follows:

Those of the first captain and the lieutenant commanding the first platoon, by a trumpeter who remains mounted on the right of the squadron. He holds the captain's horse on his right and the other on his left.

The trooper on the right of the front rank holds the horses of the two other commandants of platoons.

The trooper on the right of the rear rank, holds with his right hand the horse of the particular guide of the right, and the horses of the two trumpeters are linked on his left.

The trooper on the left of the front rank holds the horse of the particular guide of the left with his left hand.

The trooper on the left of the rear rank holds the horse of the file-closer who dismounts.

---

## THE COLUMN BY DIVISIONS.

The squadron being in line, if the first captain wishes to form it in column by divisions, he commands:

1. *Divisions right (or left) wheel.*
2. MARCH.
3. HALT (or FORWARD.)
4. *Guide left (or right.)*

Which is executed as prescribed, in order to break the squadron by platoons to the right or to the left, halting after the wheels or without halting.

The same movements are executed, when the squadron is marching in line.

The principles prescribed for the column by platoons, are applicable to the march in column by divisions, the different modes of passing from line into column, and from column into line.

To gain ground towards its flanks or to the rear, employ the means prescribed for the column by platoons. The wheels-about can be also executed by divisions.

The distance measured from the croup of the horses of the rear rank of one division, to the head of the horses of the division which follows, should be equal to the front of the division, minus the depth of the two ranks.

In the wheels on a moveable pivot by divisions, the ninth file of the platoon upon which the wheel is executed, is the middle point of the radius of the wheel. *The pivot describes an arc of circle of ten paces.*

The squadron marching in column by platoons, right in front, to form the divisions at the same gait, the first captain commands:

1. *Form divisions.*

2. MARCH.

At the first command, the chiefs of the second and fourth platoons command, *Platoon left half-wheel.*

At the command MARCH, repeated by the same officers, the second and fourth platoons execute a *half-wheel to the left* on a fixed pivot. The first and third platoons continue to march straight forward, and after having marched 30 paces, their chiefs command: HALT.

The chiefs of the second and fourth platoons, when the *half-wheel to the left* is nearly terminated, command, 1. FORWARD; 2. *Guide right*; they move straight forward, and as soon as the right file of their platoon arrives in the direction of the

left file of the platoon which precedes, they command, 1. *Right half-wheel*; 2. MARCH; 3. FORWARD; they move forward, and command HALT, on arriving abreast of the platoon belonging to the same division.

The lieutenants commanding divisions then command, *Right*—DRESS, move to the left of the division, rectify the alignment, command, FRONT, and return to the centre of their platoons.

When the column is at the *trot*, to form divisions at the same gait, conform to the principles just prescribed, except that the chiefs of the first and third platoons, at the first command, command *Walk*; at the command MARCH, repeated by them, their platoons pass to the *walk*, continue to march on, and that the chiefs of the second and fourth platoons, which execute their movements in marching at the *trot*, command *Walk*, in sufficient time to command MARCH when their platoons come up abreast of those on which they are to form.

The first captain then commands: *Guide left*.

When the column is at the gallop, to form the divisions at the same gait, conform to the same principles, the first and third platoons passing to the *trot* at the command MARCH, and the second and fourth platoons taking the *trot*, as they come up.

The column having the left in front, conform to the same principles, the first and third platoons executing in an inverse sense what has been prescribed for the second and fourth; and the latter conforming to what has been prescribed for the first and third.

The squadron marching in column by divisions, right in front, to break the divisions by platoons, the first captain commands:

1. *By platoons.*
2. MARCH.
3. *Guide left.*



At the first command, the chiefs of the second and fourth platoons command, *Platoons right-half wheel.*

At the command MARCH, repeated by the same officers, the second and fourth platoons execute a *half wheel to the right* on a fixed pivot, and the first and third platoons continue to march on.

The chiefs of the second and fourth platoons, the *half wheel to the right* being nearly terminated, command, 1. FORWARD; 2. *Guide left*; they move straight forward, and as soon as the left file of their platoon arrives in the direction of the left file of the platoon which precedes, they command, 1. *Left half-wheel*; 2. MARCH; 3. FORWARD; and move forward taking their proper distances.

The divisions are broken by platoons, on the same principles, in marching at the *trot* or at the *gallop*.

The column having the left in front, the first captain commands. 1. *By the left—by platoons*;\* 2. MARCH; 3. *Guide right*; which is executed on the same principles, the first and third platoons executing in an inverse sense what is prescribed for the second and fourth, and the latter conforming to what is prescribed for the first and third platoons.

The squadron marching in column by platoons, right in front, to form divisions, doubling the gait, the first captain commands:

- |                                |                       |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. <i>Form divisions—trot.</i> | 3. <i>Guide left.</i> |
| 2. MARCH.                      |                       |

Which is executed as just prescribed, the first

---

\*It is better to command—"By platoons from the left."

and third platoons continuing to march at the same gait, and the chiefs of the second and fourth platoons commanding: 1. *Platoon left half wheel—trot*; 2. MARCH; 3. FORWARD; 4. *Guide right*; and 1. *Right half-wheel*; 2. MARCH; 3. FORWARD; 4. *Walk*. When they arrive abreast of the platoon on which they form, they command: 5. MARCH.

The column marching at the *trot*, the divisions are formed at the *gallop*, on the same principles, at the commands: 1. *Form divisions—gallop*; 2. MARCH; 3. *Guide left*.

When the column is at the *gallop*, the divisions are formed at the same gait, the first and third platoons taking the *trot* at the command MARCH.

The squadron marching in column by divisions, right in front, to break the divisions by platoons, doubling the gait, the first captain commands:

- |                              |                         |
|------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. <i>By platoons—trot</i> . | 3. <i>Guide right</i> . |
| 2. MARCH.                    |                         |

At the first command, the chiefs of the first and third platoons command, *Trot*; those of the second and fourth platoons command, *Platoons right half-wheel—trot*.

At the command MARCH, repeated by the chiefs of platoon, the first and third platoons move forward at the *trot*. The second and fourth execute their *half-wheel to the right* on a fixed pivot, at the *trot*, and the movement is executed as prescribed above.

The column being at the *trot*, to break by platoons at the *gallop*, conform to the same principles, at the com-

commands: 1. *By platoons—gallop*; 2. MARCH; 3. *Guide left.*

When the column marches at the *gallop*, the divisions are broken at the same gait.

The squadron being in line, to break it by divisions by the right to march to the left, the first captain commands:

1. *Divisions break by the right—to march to the left.*

2. MARCH.

Which is executed as prescribed for the column by platoons, each first lieutenant commanding successively, MARCH, when the division which precedes arrives opposite the centre of the second platoon of his own division.

The same principles are observed, to break by the left to march to the right.

To break the squadron by divisions to the rear by the right, to march to the left, the first captain commands:

1. *Divisions break by the right to the rear—to march to the left.*

2. MARCH.

Which is executed as prescribed for the column by platoons, each first lieutenant commanding successively, MARCH, when the chief of the division which was on his right has commanded FORWARD, after having executed his *wheel to the right-about*.

To break to the rear by the left to march to the right, follow the same principles.

## THE SQUADRON OF SIXTY-FOUR FILES.

The principles established for the squadron of forty-eight files are applicable to the squadron of sixty-four files, with the following modifications:

The platoons being of sixteen files, the distance measured from the croup of the rear rank of one platoon to the head of the horses of the front rank of the platoon which follows, is *ten paces*.

For the changes of direction, conform to what is prescribed when the platoons are composed of twelve files, except that *the arc described by the pivot is of six paces*.

The squadron marching in column by platoons, it is broken by sections, on the principles indicated to break by fours, at the commands: 1. *By sections*: 2. MARCH. The same movements are executed *doubling the gait*. The sections are commanded as prescribed.\*

In the movement to *break by platoons by the right to march to the left*, each chief of platoon gives the command MARCH, when the platoon which precedes, after having turned to the left, arrives opposite the centre of his own platoon.

In the movement to *break by platoons to the rear by the right to march to the left*, each chief of platoon gives the command MARCH, when the chief of the platoon which precedes, after having executed his *wheel to the right-about*, commands: FORWARD.

In the wheels of a division on a moveable pivot, the *arc of circle is of 12 paces*; the twelfth file from the pivot should preserve the gait at which the division was marching; for the squadron, the *arc of circle described by the pivot being of 24 paces*, the eighth file of the second platoon from the side of the pivot should preserve the gait at which the squadron was marching.

The squadron being in line, to break by section, con-

---

\* See paragraph (in first part of platoon drill) on *column of sections*.

form to the principles prescribed in order to break by platoons, at the commands: 1. *Sections right wheel*; 2. *MARCH*; 3. *HALT* (or *FORWARD*); 4. *Guide left*; or 1. *Sections right wheel—head of column to the right* (or *to the left*.)

In the column by sections, the distance from one section to another is *two paces*.\*

The changes of direction of the column by sections are executed on the principles prescribed for the column marching by fours, the pivot describing an *arc of circle of 5 paces*, without slackening the gait.

For the oblique march, conform to what is prescribed for the *column by fours*.

The sections are broken by fours on the principles *to break the platoons by fours*, at the same gait and doubling the gait.

The squadron marching in column by sections, it is formed *to the front*, or *on right into line*, on the principles prescribed for these formations, when marching in *column by fours*.

The squadron marching in column by sections, it is formed at the same gait, or doubling the gait, by the means prescribed for the formation, *front into line when marching by fours*.

The squadron marching in column by sections, it is formed *left into line*, on the principles prescribed for the squadron marching *in column by platoons*.

The squadron is broken by sections for the *formation of close column* and for the *passage of lines*.

---

\* 2 yards.

# CAVALRY TACTICS.

---

## PART FOURTH.

---

### Single Rank Formations.

The principles which govern the movements of mounted forces formed in two ranks are equally applicable when there is but one rank.

The words of *command* remain the same, except that those which can only be executed by two rank, are omitted.

At the signal, "*boot and saddle,*" the horses are saddled, bridled, and prepared to be led out to the parade or drill ground.

The call "*to horse*" being sounded, the 1st Sergeant orders the troopers to "*lead out.*"

When the *last call only* is sounded, (as is proper in cases of sudden alarm,) the troopers saddle, bridle and mount with the utmost celerity; and form mounted at the place of assembly, which must always be previously designated.

The platoon is composed of 16 troopers as a maximum, 12 as a minimum.

It is preferable to divide into platoons of 16, although this may require the number of platoons to be diminished; platoons of 16 are divisible into sections, but not those of 12.

*Two, three, or four* platoons united may practice the squadron exercises.

A company divided into 4 platoons of 16 men will require 1 Captain, 2 Lieutenants, 4 Sergeants, 4 Corporals, and 60 Privates. When the latter fall below 60 in number, they may be divided into 3 platoons and *one section* of 8; or into 4 platoons of 12 men each.

When the number is more than sufficient for a front of 48 or 64, some of the more expert troopers will act as Corporals, the latter then acting as Sergeants. If the strength is sufficient, the number of non-commissioned officers, (and troopers acting as such,) will equal the number prescribed in the Squadron Drill, and their posts will be the same as there indicated. (See first pages of Squadron Drill.)

In the assignment of posts with the supposition that 48 or 64 *rank and file* are present, we will designate the Captain as No. 1, the next in rank No. 2, and so on to the 4th Corporal, who will be No. 11.

The company, formed as squadron in line of battle, the positions will be as follows:

No. 1,	1 yard	in front	of centre	of company.
" 2,	"	"	"	" " " " " 1st platoon.
" 3,	"	"	"	" " " " " 4th "
" 4,	"	"	"	" " " " " 2d "

No. 5,	1 yard in front of centre of 3d platoon.
" 6,	on the right flank, not counted.
" 7,	" left " "
" 8,	" " of the 1st platoon.
" 9,	" right " 2d "
" 10,	" left " 3d "
" 11,	" right " 4th "

Experienced troopers should be assigned to the flanks of platoons and sections.

The horses are conducted to the drill ground as directed in the first pages of the *Drill of the Trooper*, and having arrived there, the Captain commands:

**ATTENTION!** *In one rank*—FORM SQUADRON.\*

The Captain and chiefs of platoons are now mounted; all the rest "*stand to horse*," that is to say, they take the *position of the trooper dismounted*. The Captain and chiefs of platoon face the centres of their respective commands at 10 yards distance measured from head to head.

At the above command, the company is formed with the tallest on the right. The Captain having ascertained that the positions have been taken as directed, † he commands:

**ATTENTION!** *Right*—DRESS.

\*In practicing the Squadron movements, the word "Squadron" is used in the commands.

†The positions of all besides the Captain and chiefs of platoon are the same as in line of battle; the trumpeters 25 yards (unless otherwise ordered) in rear of the centre; the file-closers 1 yard in rear of the 3d files from the flanks. For further directions, see first pages of Platoon Drill.



The *dress* being completed, he commands: **FRONT**, and directs the Orderly Sergeant to call the roll; which having been done and the absentees reported, the Captain commands:

*In each platoon*—**COUNT BY FOURS.**

This is executed as directed in the platoon and squadron, omitting what is prescribed for the rear rank.

The Captain cautions the troopers to recollect their numbers, and then commands:

**PREPARE TO MOUNT.**

At the command *prepare to mount*, all other cavalry than mounted riflemen will be governed by the principles laid down in the Drill of the Trooper.

Mounted Riflemen will observe the principles explained in the Mounted-Rifle-Drill.

The same remarks are applicable to the execution of the next following command, viz: **MOUNT**; also to the execution of the commands, "*Prepare to dismount*" and "*Dismount.*"

Having mounted, all will take posts as above prescribed, for battle order; mounted riflemen conforming to the rules prescribed for that class of mounted troops.

The company being in line, to execute a movement by files from one of the flanks, the Captain commands:

1. *By files to the right (or left.)*    2. **MARCH.**

At the 1st command, the chief of the *platoon*

which should begin the movement, with the right (or left) particular guide following him, will place himself facing in the direction indicated, on the prolongation of the flank, the croup of the Sergeant's horse being one yard from the boot of the flank man.

At the word MARCH, the trooper on the flank indicated will turn and follow the Sergeant guide of that flank. All the others will turn in succession, each one opening the rein and closing the leg on the side indicated, promptly, so as to take and preserve the distance of 2 feet from the file in front of him.

The chiefs of (all except the leading) platoon will march one yard from their leading files, abreast of them and on the side of guides.\*

The guide of that flank which has now become the rear will march 2 feet behind the last file in the column.

The Captain will march on the side of guides 4 yards from the centre.

When 3 Lieutenants are present, the 3d in rank will command the 2d platoon, and a corresponding change will be made in the posts of the non-commissioned officers. The music will turn to the right (or left) when the centre files turn, maintaining the same relative position as in line, except when ordered to the front or rear, or when obstacles require a change.

One bugler will follow the Captain at 3 yards distance.

---

\*The "side of the guides" is the *left* when the *right* is in front, and the *right* when the *left* is in front.

In the column of route, passing along highways or streets, or marching in review, the music will move 6 yards in front of the leading officer.

Columns of fours, twos, and files are formed to the front from either flank, by the commands and on the principles prescribed in the drills of the Platoon and Squadron.

The column of files being in motion, right in front, to form line facing to the left, without gaining ground to that flank, the Captain commands:

1. FRONT.

2. HALT.

3. *Right*—DRESS.

4. FRONT.

At the word *front*, the leading officer and Sergeant turn promptly to the left, and halt at the word *halt*. All the rest move forward in the original direction of the column, each trooper commencing his turn to the left when 2 yards from his place in the new line, halting 1 yard short of the line, and then gradually dressing up, without passing over it.

The chiefs of platoon will take their posts as soon as half of their platoons have come up to the line.

The Captain taking position near the right flank, will direct the alignment, not giving the word *front* until the last file is aligned.

The column of files left in front will be formed facing to the right of the column, without gaining ground to the right, on the same principles, but by inverse means, at the commands:

1. FRONT.
2. HALT.

3. *Left*—DRESS.
4. FRONT.

The movements "*right into line*" and "*left into line*" are executed as directed in the second and third parts of this volume. The latter movements require 30 yards to be gained to the flank, but in other respects are similar in execution to the "*Front, halt.*"

All other movements of cavalry are fully explained in the three first parts of this work, or in the following instructions for Mounted Riflemen.

Corps of cavalry designed exclusively for the latter branch of service will form and manœuvre altogether on the following principles, supplying what is wanting in the following rules and explanations from the 1st, 2d and 3d parts.

With such corps, the actual engagement being principally on foot, the *Light Infantry* exercises of the *schools of the soldier and company* should be well understood.

REMARK.—The large size bowie-knife, or the sword-bayonet, is perhaps preferable to the sabre for the mounted-rifle service, and the rifles should be breech-loaders of long range.

## SKIRMISH

# Drill of Mounted Rifles.

---

### ARTICLE I.

§ 1.—Composition of a company acting singly, and posts of officers, non-commissioned officers, &c., &c.

A company consists of one captain, one first lieutenant, one second lieutenant, one brevet\* second lieutenant, four sergeants, four corporals, one farrier, one blacksmith, two buglers, and sixty-four privates minimum, seventy-four maximum.

A company is divided into two platoons, which are numbered from the right, FIRST platoon and SECOND platoon.

Each platoon contains two sections. The first and second sections make up the first platoon; the third and fourth sections make up the second platoon.

The sections are called from the right in the order in which they stand—first, second, third and fourth section.

Each section is made up of “sets of four,” which are called in the order in which they stand in their respective sections, from the right, “first set,” “second set,” “third set,” &c., &c.

*Post of officers and non-commissioned officers of a company in line of battle, viz:*

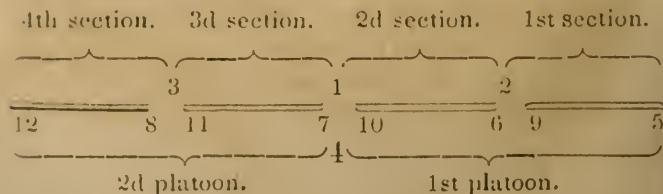
---

\*Or junlor second lieutenant.

- No. 1. Captain, ten yards in front of centre of company.
- No. 2. 1st lieutenant, five yards in front of centre of 1st platoon.
- No. 3. 2d lieutenant, five yards in front of centre of 2d platoon.
- No. 4. Brevet 2d lieutenant, five yards in rear of centre of company, (not replaced when absent.)
- No. 5. 1st sergeant, on right of 1st section, not counted in the rank.
- No. 6. 2d sergeant, on right of 2d section, not counted in the rank.
- No. 7. 3d sergeant, on right of 3d section, not counted in the rank.
- No. 8. 4th sergeant, on right of 4th section, not counted in the rank.
- No. 9. 1st corporal, on left of 1st section, not counted in the rank.
- No. 10. 2d corporal, on left of 2d section, not counted in the rank.
- No. 11. 3d corporal, on left of 3d section, not counted in the rank.
- No. 12. 4th corporal, on left of 4th section, not counted in the rank.

} Measured from  
face to face.

Farrier and blacksmith in the rank ; bugler near and behind the captain, or on right of 1st sergeant, and one yard from him.



In line of battle there will be an interval of one yard between the corporal on the left of each section and the sergeant on the right of next section. In column of platoons the same interval will be observed.

In column of platoons the captain will be habitually on the side of the guide, and about ten yards outside the centre of the column. The other officers, non-commissioned officers, &c., will occupy the positions above indicated.

In column of sections the captain will be ten yards outside the flank of the column on the side of the guide.

The first lieutenant will be five yards outside the flank of the column on the side of the guide, and opposite the centre of the interval between the 1st and 2d sections.

The second lieutenant will be five yards outside the flank of the column on the side of the guide, and opposite the centre of the interval between the 3d and 4th sections.

The sergeants will be one yard in front of the centre of their respective sections, and will command them. The corporals will be in the rank of their respective sections.

The buglers will accompany the captain, or will be on the right of the leading sergeant of the column.

In column of fours, twos, or file, the captain will be ten yards outside the centre of the flank of the column, on the side of the guide.

The 1st lieutenant will be five yards outside of

the centre of the flank of his platoon, on the side of the guide.

The 2d lieutenant will be five yards outside of the centre of the flank of his platoon, on the side of the guide.

The sergeants (except the sergeant of the leading section) will be abreast of the leading four, two, or file, of their respective sections, and on the side opposite the guide.

The sergeant of the leading section will be in front of its leading four.

In all columns the brevet 2d lieutenant, when there is one serving with the company, will be five yards outside of the centre of the flank of the column, and on the side opposite the guide.

The corporal will, in all columns of fours, twos, and files, be on the side opposite the guide, abreast of the last set, two, or file. In columns of companies, platoons, or sections, he remains in the rank.

The company having been thus formed, will be drilled by the means and directions laid down in Cavalry Tactics for the squadron.

The section will be drilled by the means and directions laid down in Cavalry Tactics for the platoon.

The only changes necessary in order to make the one answer for the other, are those which result from the diminished depth of the rank and the use of the words "company" and "section," instead of "squadron" and "platoon :"—(*e. g.*)

In forming to left into line from column of fours,



the command must be changed to, "By fours left wheel."

## To mount.

§ 2.—The command being dismounted in line of battle, the men standing to horse, to mount, the commands of the Chief are :

1. *Prepare to mount.*
2. MOUNT.

At the first command, the sergeant and numbers two and four of each section move five yards to the front, stepping off with the left foot, and regulating by the right. The corporals and numbers one and three stand fast until the others have cleared them ; all then prepare to mount according to the principles laid down in Cavalry Tactics, except that they take the end of the reins in the right hand, draw them through the left, which holds them above the middle of the neck of the horse between the thumb and hand, with the palm down, until the horse just feels the bit ; then with the right hand adjust the stirrup to the left foot, and with the left hand take up a lock of the mane so that its end comes out by the thumb ; then take the surplus part of the reins in the right hand between the thumb and hand, with the palm up, and seize the right side of the pommel with the right hand.

At the second command, all mount together, and the corporals and numbers one and three immediately move forward, and place themselves boot to boot with the sergeants and numbers two and four.

The Chief corrects the alignment, if it be necessary, commanding "Right—dress." The Assistant places himself at this command on the right of the line, looking along it, and correcting the files who are out of place.

The Chief remains in front, in order to superintend the alignment. The Assistant commands "Steady," when the files are all correctly aligned; and then the Chief commands "Front."

### To dismount.

§ 3.—The command being mounted in line of battle, to dismount it the commands are :

I. *Prepare to dismount.*

2. DISMOUNT.

At the first command, the sergeant and numbers two and four in each section move to the front five yards; the corporals and numbers one and three stand fast. All then prepare to dismount in other respects as laid down in Cavalry Tactics, except that they take the reins in the left hand with a lock of the mane, and carry the right hand to the right side of the pommel.

At the second command all dismount, leaving the reins over the pommel; the sergeants and numbers two and four stand to horse, while the corporals and numbers one and three lead forward and form rank with them.

### To link.

To link after dismounting, the man stands to horse, faces about to the rear, takes the link which

hangs from the halter ring of the horse of his left file in his right hand, seizes his own horse by the bit near the mouth, and draws the horse of his left file towards his own until he can hook the snap into the curb ring; in hooking, the nails of his right hand are down.

When he dismounts he leaves his reins over the pommel of the saddle.

To facilitate the linking, the horse holder should bear his horse's head well towards number three.

§4.—Form and course of inspection for the single rank formation: The company being formed in line, in one rank, mounted, the officers and non-commissioned officers, in their places, (see section 1,) to inspect it—the commands are:

1. *For inspection—Prepare to dismount.*
2. DISMOUNT.

*At the first command*, the first and second lieutenants move forward ten yards. The brevet second lieutenant places himself upon the line with them, in front of the left file of the company; they all then return sabre and prepare to dismount.

The non-commissioned officers move forward ten yards, and prepare to dismount.

Numbers two and four move forward five yards, and prepare to dismount.

Numbers one and three prepare to dismount in their places.

*At the second command* all dismount and stand to horse. They then shift the pistol holster towards the front of the body sufficiently to enable

the inspecting officer readily to withdraw the pistol. The men then unsling rifles, order arms, and spring rammers without noise, with the right arm passed through the rein; they then allow the rifle to fall across the body obliquely into the hollow of the left arm, which holds it with the fore-arm extended down, the barrel between the thumb and closed fingers. In this position they await the inspection.

As soon as the inspecting officer perceives that the second command has been executed, he returns his sabre, dismounts, gives his horse to a trumpeter to hold, and commences his inspection on the right of the line of officers. He passes along the front of the line, around its left, and along its rear; he then passes to the front of the line of non-commissioned officers, which he inspects in the same manner. He draws and inspects the pistol of each man as he comes to him, and, after inspecting, returns it to the holster. He then passes to the right of the front line of men, draws and inspects the pistol of the man on the right of that line, returns it to the holster, takes the rifle from the position in which it rests, and, after inspecting, returns it to that position; and so on throughout the line. Each man slings his rifle and re-adjusts his pistol, as soon as the inspector has passed one file beyond him. After having completed his inspection of the men, horses, arms, equipments, &c., from the front, the officer passes around the left and along the rear of the line, examining as he goes the condition of men, horses, arms, and equip-

ments. He then inspects the rear line of men in the same manner.

After which he mounts, and commands,

- |                             |                        |
|-----------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. <i>Prepare to mount.</i> | 4. <i>Right—DRESS.</i> |
| 2. MOUNT.                   | 5. FRONT.              |
| 3. FORM RANK.               |                        |

At the first command all prepare to mount in their places. At the second command all mount, and the rear line of men move forward to their places, boot to boot with the front line of men. All then move forward together to the line of non-commissioned officers, on which they are aligned by the fourth and fifth commands.

The sabres are then inspected, as directed in Cavalry Tactics, by the command:

#### 1. INSPECTION OF SABRE.

If the company be in tents or other quarters, the valises or saddle bags and clothing are inspected in the quarters.

If in the field, the men will unstrap and display them on the ground at their feet, as they stand to horse, before they unslung rifles.

The trumpeters will be near and in rear of the inspecting officer when he gives the first command. They will dismount with the rest. One of them holds the horse of the other, who goes to take that of the inspector.

## ARTICLE II.

## Skirmish drill for mounted rifles.

## § 5. Preliminary remarks.

For this drill the men should be dressed so as to secure the greatest freedom of action, as in the blouse or sack, and in the forage cap, with the chin-strap down. The revolver will be worn in a belt-holster upon the right side of the man. The gun will be slung across his back, with the butt near his right hip. In addition to the usual equipment of a cavalry soldier, each man will be provided with a "link," for the purpose of securing his horse whenever he dismounts. It will be buckled in the halter-ring of the headstall, and when not wanted for immediate use, will be hooked up by the snap in the same ring.

At the signal "boot and saddle," the horses will be saddled and bridled.

At the signal "to horse," the command will be formed according to the instructions already given in section 2.

Should the command be less than a complete company, the officer in charge of it will make such changes in its organization as are necessary in consequence of the absence of members.

Every command, be it a full company or a scouting party less than a company, will be divided into four equal sections if possible.

A section must contain at least eight men.

Some portion of every command will be held in reserve, unless it is so small as to manifestly render it unwise to divide it. Any section may form the reserve; and its commander will be assigned by selection and not according to rank.

A "set of four" means the four men who tell off together.

A "chief of four" is the right file of the set, or "number one" of the set, and will be habitually the guide of his set; when in column of fours, he will command the set to which he belongs.

He will be responsible that the men of his set *never* separate from each other, and for the interval, distance, and alignment.

The senior officer on drill is termed the "Chief," his next in rank is termed the "Assistant."

Before skirmishing, two or three men will be detailed to accompany and protect the Chief.

Preparatory to skirmishing, a section will take *open order*.

The interval between men in open order, measured from "boot to boot," is twenty-seven inches.

In a column of fours, open order, the distance between the sets of four, from croup to head, is 4 yards.

In a column of twos, open order, the distance from croup to head is eighteen inches.

In a column "by file," open order, the distance from croup to head is eighteen inches.

These distances and interval are deduced from the length and breadth of the horse, and from the agreement which must exist between the depth of a column, and the length of the line into which it will wheel.

The interval of twenty-seven inches will be found in practice ample to enable the men to mount and dismount in their places in line or in column, without the necessity of the alternate files moving out to the front for that purpose.

In an enemy's country, or when in danger of sudden attack or ambuscade, the leading section of the company or scouting party should march in open order, so as to be able to get at once into action.

### To take open order.

§ 6. Being in line, right in front, the commands of the Chief are:

1. *1st section, ( or 2d or 3d, as the case may be,)*  
*open order*—GALLOP.

2. MARCH.

At the first command all gather their horses; at the second command all take the gallop, except the centre file of the section, which trots out directly to the front. Those on the right of the centre oblique to the right, each man continuing to oblique until he has an interval of twenty-seven inches between him and the next file on his left; those on the left of the centre continue to oblique to the left until each man has twenty-seven inches interval between him and the next file on his right. They all then align themselves on the centre, take up its gait, and continue to move to the front until the next command of the Chief.



## To return to close order.

Being in line, right in front, in open order, the commands of the Chief are :

1. *Close order*—TROT.
2. MARCH.

At the first command all gather their horses ; at the second command the centre file moves to the front at the walk, the others close in towards him at the trot ; each in succession taking up the walk and aligning on the centre as he gains his position in the line.

§ 7. The section being in line, right in front, open order, breaks into columns of fours, by the commands :

1. *By fours*—TROT, (OR GALLOP.)
2. MARCH.

At the first command the first set of four gathers its horses, and takes the trot together at the second. After the first set has cleared the front of the line, or marched three yards, the second set moves out at the trot, (or gallop,) marches straight to the front until clear of the line, and then obliquely to the right until in position in column exactly behind the first set, and at four yards distance from it, when it marches to the front to take its place in column. The third set follows the second, and so on throughout the section, according to the foregoing directions.

Care must be taken to avoid losing distance in this movement. The sets of four must move out

promptly in turn, and oblique together. The Chief commands "Guide right" when the first set is out.

A column of "twos" and "file" may be formed on the same principles and by the same means, except that the distance in these cases is only eighteen inches from head to croup.

In all formations of this drill, the same principles will be observed in regard to increasing the gait as are now established in Cavalry Tactics.

When in column of fours, twos, or file, the various methods of forming into line (front, right, or left,) can be executed by the commands and means laid down in Cavalry Tactics for the platoon.

Observe: that as there is no rear rank, lines can be formed at once on either flank by wheeling by fours to the right or left. When the right of the column is in front, and the wheel is made by fours to the right, the sets will be in line by inversion. The men of each set will not be inverted.

When the men are not well instructed in the drill, the deployments from close order into open order, and from open order into skirmishing order, should be made at the walk or trot. Habitually they should be executed at the gallop; and in action, with the greatest possible celerity compatible with steadiness.

In deploying, the officers and non-commissioned officers will fall to the rear of the line in order to superintend the movement.

Every movement not fully described in the following pages will be understood to be executed, as is now ordered, in the system already in use.

§ 8. To form column of twos, open order, from column by file, marching at the walk, right in front, the commands are :

1. *Form twos, open order*—TROT.      2. MARCH.

At the second command numbers two and four oblique to the left at the trot, and move to the front when in rear of their places in columns of twos, until in line with their respective ones and threes. The leading set of twos then being at the walk, all the others close up at the trot to their places, with distance of eighteen inches, and interval from boot to boot of twenty-seven inches.

§ 9. To form column of fours, open order, from column by file, when marching at the walk, right in front. the commands are :

1. *Form fours, open order*—TROT.      2. MARCH.

At the first command number one of each set continues to march at the walk to the front; twos, threes, and fours of every set oblique to the left at the trot, each moving to the front when in rear of the place he will occupy in his set of four; when they have gained their places in line with numbers one, the leading set being at the walk, the others take up the trot, which they keep until each has arrived at the distance of four yards from the one preceding it; each in turn then takes up the walk. The Chief commands "Guide right" when the first set is formed.

§ 10. To form column of fours, open order, from column of twos, open order, when marching at the walk, with right in front, the commands are :

1. *Form fours*—TROT.

## 2. MARCH.

At the second command threes and fours oblique to the left at the trot, until opposite their places in the sets of four, when they move to the front, taking up the walk when in line with ones and twos. The Chief commands "Guide right" when the movement is completed. Ones and twos preserve the walk and direction during the movement; and after the other files have moved out, must take care not to diminish the distance left by them. If the column is trotting when the movement is ordered, it will be executed at the gallop.

§ 11. To break from column of fours into column of twos, open or close order, marching at the walk, with right in front, the commands are :

1. *By twos*.

## 2. MARCH.

At the second command numbers three and four halt until numbers one and two have cleared them, when they oblique to the right, promptly, into their places in column of twos. The Chief commands "Guide right" as soon as the movement is completed.

§ 12. To break a column of twos, in open or in close order, into column by file, when marching at the walk, right in front, the commands are :

1. *By file*—TROT.

## 2. MARCH.

At the second command number one of the leading set takes the trot. As soon as he has

cleared number two of the first set, number two obliques to the right at the trot, and enters the column behind number one. Number three then moves in his place in column at the trot, followed by number four, who, by obliquing at the trot, takes his place in rear of number three; and so on throughout the column, each even-numbered file obliquing at the trot as soon as the odd-numbered file on his right has cleared him. The files must move very promptly and exactly in their proper time, so as not to lose distance in this movement.

Being in column of twos, wheels to the left may be executed when the right is in front; or to the right with the left in front, but not the reverse of these, for then the twos would be inverted in their respective fours, and confusion would result on account of the change in position of the horse-holder.

§ 13. To deploy forward as skirmishers, from a line, right in front, halted, or marching at any gait, the commands are :

1. *On (such) set—Deploy as skirmishers—*  
GALLOP.

2. MARCH.

At the second command all take the gallop except the designated set, which trots out to the front.—Those on the right and left of it oblique at the gallop to the right and left, each set taking up the trot when on line with the directing set, and at fifteen yards from the nearest file of the next set on the side of direction.

In this movement the chiefs of four will be held

responsible for the direction and interval and alignment of the men of their respective sets, and will see that the sets are at proper intervals from each other. The Chief will halt the line when it has reached the point where it is to act.

The following movements will enable cavalry, when on a march, to get into action with the least possible delay, in case of an attack when passing a defile or of any other ambuscade.

It is understood that always, when dismounted to fight, the horse-holders remain mounted, unless otherwise ordered.

In all the manœuvres of this article the commands numbered "1" are cautionary.

### ARTICLE III.

§ 14. To dismount to fight when in column of fours, open order, right in front, halted or marching at any gait, to meet an enemy on the left and front, the commands are:

1. *Dismount to fight.*
2. *Action front and left.*
3. *Commence firing.*

At the first command all halt, spring to the ground, link horses, unsling rifles, and step one yard to the front. At the second command the first set moves forward four yards, and at the third command commences firing. The other sets move at the double quick obliquely to the left, and take their places on the line with the first set. Each set, as soon as it arrives upon the line, commences firing.

In case it is desired to form the line towards the right of the head of the column, the commands are :  
 1. *Dismount to fight* ; 2. *Action front and right* ;  
 3. *Commence firing* All the sets except the first will then gain their places in the line by obliquing to the right. The sets will be in line by inversion. The men in each set will be in direct order.

§ 15. Being in column of fours open order, right in front, marching at any gait, or halted, to meet an attack on left of rear, the commands are :

1. *Dismount to fight.*
2. *Action rear and left.*
3. *Commence firing.*

At the first command all halt, spring to the ground, link horses, unsling rifles, and step one yard to the front. At the second command the men of the rear set face to the right, and, led by their chief, file to the right around the rear set of horses to a line five yards in rear of their croups.

At the second command all the other sets face to the left, and move at the double-quick. Each man as he clears the column moves obliquely to the left and rear to his place on the line with the rear set.

If it be desired to get at once into action, the Chief commands "Commence firing" as soon as the set first on the line is established. This set then commences the fire ; and each of the others takes it up in succession as it arrives upon the line ; and in all of the following movements the same rule will be observed.

§ 16. Being in column of fours, open order, right in front, marching at any gait, or halted, to meet an attack from the right of the column, the commands are :

1. *Dismount to fight.*
2. *Action right.*

At the first command all halt, spring to the ground, link horses, unsling rifles, and step one yard to the front. At the second command all move briskly upon a line five yards outside the right flank of the column, where they take their places, in line of battle, faced to the right. The sets will be in order by inversion ; but the men in each set will be in direct order, the chief being on the right. From this position they may be deployed forward as skirmishers, if it be desired.

§ 17. When in column of fours, open order, right in front, halted or marching, to meet an attack from the left, the commands are :

1. *Dismount to fight..*
2. *Action left.*

At the first command all halt, spring to the ground, link horses, unsling rifles, and step one yard to the front. At the second command all move briskly to the left, and place themselves on a line five yards outside the left flank of the column, facing to the left of it, and in their proper places in line of battle. From this position they may be deployed forward as skirmishers, if desired.

§ 18. Being in column of twos, with right in front, marching at any gait, or halted, to meet an enemy on left of front, the commands are :



1. *By twos, left wheel—MARCH.*
2. *Dismount to fight.*
3. *Action front and left.*

At the first command, the twos wheel to the left and halt. At the second command all dismount, link horses, unsling rifles, and step one yard to the front. At the third command the leading set moves to a line five yards to the right of the right flank, as now formed, and facing in that direction. The others move obliquely to their right and front, at the double quick, and take their places on line with the first.

If it be desired to form the line towards the right of the head of the column, the commands are :

1. *By twos, left wheel—MARCH.*
2. *Dismount to fight.*
3. *Action front and right.*

Each of the sets in rear of the leading set will then gain its place in the line by passing through the interval on the right of its set of horses, and moving obliquely to the right and front, to its place in line with the leading set. The sets will be in line by inversion.

§ 19. Being in column of twos, right in front, marching at any gait, or halted, to meet an enemy in rear, the commands are :

1. *By twos, left wheel—MARCH.*
2. *Dismount to fight.*
3. *Action rear and left.*

At the first command all wheel by twos into line to the left, and halt. At the second command all dismount, link horses, unsling rifles, step one yard to the front, and await the next command. At the third command the rear set faces to the left, and moves at the double-quick to its place on a line five yards to the left of the left flank, as now formed, and facing in that direction. The other sets face obliquely to the left, and move off at the double-quick to their places in the line with the rear set.

If it be desired to form the line to the right instead of the left, the first two commands are the same as in the other case; the third command is, "ACTION REAR AND RIGHT;" at which the rear set takes its place on the line as before, and the others pass through the intervals to the left of their sets of horses, respectively, and take their places in succession on the left of the set first established. The sets will then be in line by inversion.

§ 20. Being in column of twos, marching at any gait, or halted, with right in front, to dismount to fight, in order to meet an enemy on the right flank, the commands are:

1. *By twos, left wheel*—MARCH.
2. *Dismount to fight*—Action right.

At the first command the twos wheel into line to the left and halt. At the second command all dismount and link. In linking, the men remain faced to the front, and take the link in the left hand, and the bit in the right. After linking they face about,

unsling rifles, and take their places in a line five yards outside the croups of the horses. The cautionary words "ACTION RIGHT" should be uttered immediately after "DISMOUNT TO FIGHT."

The method of linking is changed in this instance to avoid the inconvenience which might result from the men having to stoop under the links, after linking, in order to pass to their position in rear of the horses.

§ 21. Being in column of twos, right in front, marching at any gait, or halted, to dismount to fight, to meet an enemy on the left, the commands are :

1. *By twos, left wheel*—MARCH.
2. *Dismount to fight.*

At the first command wheel by twos into line to the left and halt ; at the second command all dismount, link horses, unsling rifles, step five yards to the front and stand fast.

In case it should be desired in any of the preceding manœuvres to form the line in an oblique direction, the commands would be the same ; but the set first in the line would be placed in the desired direction, and the others would conform to it. The Chief will judge from the circumstances which of the manœuvres to adopt—whether the flank, the front, or the rear.

In all the cases of this article the command "Commence firing" will be the signal for the set first on the line to open fire. The other sets, if not on the line when it is given, will commence firing as soon as practicable after they arrive on the line.

## ARTICLE IV.

§ 22. To deploy as skirmishers, when dismounted, the command is :

1. *On (such) set—Deploy—FORWARD.*

At this command the section springs forward at the double-quick. The sets on the right of the directing set move obliquely towards the right until opposite their places in line of battle, when they move to the front, aligning by the left.

The sets on the left of the directing set move obliquely towards the left until opposite their places in line of battle, when they move to the front, aligning by the right. All move forward until halted by the Chief.

When in proper position in line of battle, thus deployed, there will be fifteen yards between sets and three feet between files in each set.

The firing will commence at the command of the Chief.

If it be desired to deploy on the line already occupied, the command will be "ON (*such*) SET—DEPLOY."

The directing set stands fast; the sets to the right and left of it face to the right and left, respectively, and move at the double-quick to take their intervals; then face to the front, and align themselves on the directing set.

§ 23. To deploy as skirmishers, mounted, from a column of fours, right in front, the commands are :

1. *On (such) set—Deploy—Gallop.*      2. MARCH.

At the second command the directing set trots out to the front; those in front of it oblique to the right at the gallop; those in rear to the left at the gallop; and all take trot when they have gained their intervals of fifteen yards, aligning themselves by the directing set. The chief will halt the line when it has arrived where it is to act.

To assemble the skirmishers into line or column again, the Chief will place himself at, or otherwise indicate, the point at which the directing set is to rest, and have the rally sounded. At this signal the sets will close in at the gallop upon the indicated point and take their places in line of battle.

When the line is formed, it will be broken into column, in order to advance or retire as may be necessary.

§ 24. Having been thus deployed into line for skirmishing, to commence action, the commands are:

- |                              |                            |
|------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. <i>Dismount to fight.</i> | 3. HALT.                   |
| 2. FORWARD.                  | 4. <i>Commence firing.</i> |

At the first command, all, except the horscholders, dismount, link horses, unsling rifles, step one pace to the front, and await the next order. At the second command the line moves forward at the double-quick until halted. At the fourth command the right file of each set delivers his fire, and he is followed in succession by the other two.

The chief of four will take care that there is always one gun loaded in his set; this will never be neglected, whether in advancing or retreating. The files of each set must depend upon each other

for support and assistance; they must never separate; every kind of cover must be seized and occupied by the skirmishers; each chief of four must be alert to perceive such advantages for his set, taking care, however, that in attempting to secure them he does not separate too far from the other sets of the line to receive or give support when necessary.

The horses will be habitually kept at about one hundred yards in rear of their riders, though they should be nearer, when they can find shelter from fire which will admit of it. Fifty yards will be far enough when the enemy does not use fire-arms.

They will be under charge of a non-commissioned officer; and when it is desired to remount rapidly, should be advanced to meet their riders. The reserve will be kept mounted and where it can best protect the horses of the dismounted men and get into action best.

The deployed line will be manœuvred by the commands, signals, and means provided in the Cavalry Tactics.

If it be desired to fight mounted, the Chief will command the charge. The men will then draw sabre, or pistol and charge.

§ 25. The section being in column of fours, open order, right in front, and at the walk, to take close order, the commands are:

I. *Close order*—TROT.                      2. MARCH.

At this command number one of the leading set marches to the front at the walk. The other

men of his set closing upon him at the trot until each has gained his place in the set of four in close order. The set then walks. The other sets close at the trot in the same manner, each walking when it has closed to eighteen inches from that in its front.

‡ 26. The section being in column of twos, right in front, open order, to take close order, the commands are :

1. *Close order.*

2. MARCH.

At this command, numbers two and four incline to the right, slightly quickening the gait and place themselves boot to boot with numbers one and three.

‡ 27. To form column of fours, in close order, when marching in column of file at the walk, with right in front, the commands are :

1. *Form fours.*

2. *Trot—MARCH.*

At the second command, number one of the leading set continues to march to the front at the walk. All the others oblique to the left at the trot; each man marching to the front when in rear of his place in his set of fours in close order, and aligning by number one of his set. All of the sets (except the leading set) continue the trot until they have closed up to within eighteen inches of each other, and then take the walk.

## ARTICLE V.

§ 28. To sling rifles, from carry arms, the command is

1. *Sling rifles.*

At this command, raise the piece with the right hand a little higher than the hip, inclining the barrel over the right shoulder, and in rear of the head; at the same time, with the left hand near the right shoulder, move the sling out from the barrel, thrust the head, right shoulder and right arm through the opening; let the piece fall into its position, steadying it with the right hand, and drop the hands by the side.

To unsling rifles, the command is:

1. *Unslung rifles.*

At this command, pass the right hand through the opening between the sling and piece near the right hip, bear the piece towards the front with the right arm, seize it with the right hand as in carry arms, and raise it a little above the right hip; at the same time, with the left hand, free the sling from the head, and lower the piece to the position of carry arms.

§ 29. All of the movements described herein are supposed to be executed when the right is in front. It will be understood that they can all be executed when the left is in front upon the same principles by inverse means.



The men should always, after dismounting, leave their reins over the pommel of the saddle.

When more than two full companies are serving together, and their front in single rank would be unduly extended, all lines should be formed of companies in column of platoons at wheeling distance.

As far as possible, the composition of the different sets will remain unchanged, and every thing should be done which will promote the mutual dependence of the men of each set on each other.

They should act together as much as possible on all kinds of duty, as well in the fatigue duties of the camp or garrison as when on drill or in action.

All details should be made as much as practicable, of sets of four, rather than of individuals from different sets; and the chief of four should be always in command of his set, and invested with the authority of a non-commissioned officer over it. He must see that his men stand by each other in action, and whether in the charge, in pursuit, or in retreat, that they never separate. After the men and horses are familiar with the drill, all of its movements should be executed at the gallop.

The men should be made to saddle up with the greatest possible despatch whenever the "boot and saddle" sounds.

Always before using their *guns*, the men must dismount.

In order to avoid fretting the horses, the men should be at least five yards from them before they commence firing.

When the men are in action on foot, they should

be manœuvred with due reference to the safety of their horses.

While the horses should be so far in rear of the men as to be out of the range of the enemy's fire, they should not be so far that their riders cannot reach them before the enemy, if an attempt should be made to capture or stampede them. Generally, in open ground, one hundred yards will be about the maximum distance. They should be nearer, if they can be safe from fire.

One of the non-commissioned officers of each section should be left in charge of its horses when the men dismount to fight, and he will be held responsible for their security and proper management. The other will dismount with his section, linking his horse to that of the nearest number one.

In this drill, inversions of platoons, of sections, and of sets of four should be frequently practiced, but the individual men of the sets should never, either when mounted or on foot, be inverted in their sets.

When the company is about to be formed, two or three men will be detailed to accompany the chief during the drill or skirmish.

Whenever the men are dismounted, at the command "mount" they will run to their horses without unnecessary noise, unlink and mount.

When the "rally" is sounded, the skirmishers will close upon the indicated point at the gallop, and by the quickest means.

When charging in line with pistols or sabres, the officers must ride in the rank; the captain on the right of the first platoon, the first lieutenant

on the left of it, the second lieutenant on the right of the second platoon, and the brevet second lieutenant on its left. In case of the absence of any one of them, his place must not be supplied by the next in rank, except on the flank of the company.

All the commands should be habitually given with the trumpet; and, on drill, the trumpeters should always accompany the chief. It is very important that, in this drill, the men should learn perfectly what the signals mean.



# A GLOSSARY OF TERMS

USED IN

## CAVALRY TACTICS.

---

**ABOUT.**—*About-face* is a change of front on the heels as pivots over an arc of  $180^{\circ}$ , that is to say over a semi-circle; *about-wheel* is a circular movement of the line on one flank as pivot, so that the new *front* is the former *rear*.

**ALIGNMENT.**—The act of straightening or forming troops or individuals on right lines, marked by fixed points or guides. It also signifies the line itself.

**ASSEMBLY.**—A trumpet call. The collecting and uniting together in order the units on parts of military corps.

**ARMY.**—An armed body of men. It is usually applied to large collections of troops comprising several arms of service.

**ARTILLERY.**—All the offensive weapons of war; technically, cannon and such weapons as are too heavy for the use of single men. As a distinct *arm of service*, it embraces only those corps whose appropriate arms are of the last named description. Light artillery drawn by horses should be organized in squadrons.

**BREECH.**—The extremity of a gun nearest the vent or cone.

**BREECH-LOADER.**—All fire-arms not loaded by the muzzle. These, including revolvers and repeating arms, are the only suitable guns for horsemen.

- BRIGADE.**—The command of a Brigadier-General; composed of 2 or more regiments; 2 or more brigades form a division.
- CAVALRY.**—Soldiers who serve chiefly on horseback; formerly they were confined to the mounted service; and those who were armed with muskets, serving often on foot, were called dragoons. In our service the difference is merely nominal.
- CARBINE.**—A short musket much used by cavalry. The only varieties of carbine now approved by experienced commanders are such as load at the breach, and revolvers.
- CHARGE.**—A rapid movement either at the *gallop* or *trot-out*, by which actual contact with the enemy is obtained.
- COLUMN.**—Parallel lines of troops, generally at equal distances. In signification, it is opposite to *line*; also, in cavalry, it means single men and horses arranged one behind another, or a similar arrangement of twos, fours, sections, platoons, &c.
- COLUMN OF ROUTE.**—Is usually a column of *files twos* or *fours*, but should be formed of platoons, when obstacles do not prevent.
- COLUMN WITH DISTANCE.**—Column of platoons with wheeling distance, that is, distance between them equal to the front of a platoon.
- CLOSE COLUMN.**—Column of *squadrons* with 12 yards distance.
- COUNTERMARCH** is usually understood as a movement which changes the direction to one opposite; its tactical meaning is, a flank movement by files which changes the *front* to the former *rear*.
- COMMANDS** are of three kinds: 1st. That of caution, which is "*attention*," the last syllable being strongly emphasized; 2d. The preparatory command, which indicates the desired movement; 3d. That of execution, such as "*March*," or "*Halt*," on receiving

which, the execution of the commands follows instantly. In the manual at arms and in the *foot drill* the commands especially of *execution* should be distinct, but very short; but all others should be prolonged considerably. The commands are numbered 1, 2, 3, &c., which numbers are *not expressed* in giving the commands.

COMPANY.—A number of soldiers usually varying from 50 to 100. This is the regimental unit for infantry, but not for cavalry; the latter should therefore be required by law to organize in *squadrons*.

CROUP.—The buttocks of a horse.

CUIRASSIER.—A horseman wearing defensive armour.

DISTANCE is measured perpendicular to the proper front, or from front to rear; thus the distance between the *front* and *rear* rank in close order is 2 feet; that between squadrons in close order is 12 yards.

DEPTH is the extent from the head to the rear of a column.

DEPLOYMENT.—The movement from close column into line.

DEFILE.—A narrow pass between obstacles compelling a reduction of the front of column or line.

DIVISION, in the squadron, is composed of 2 platoons; a half-squadron; in an army a *division* is two or more brigades.

DIRECT-MARCH is a forward movement perpendicular to the alignment.

DIAGONAL-MARCH is one which commences with a wheel of an eighth of a circle, to gain a certain point to the right or left.

EVOLUTIONS of a regiment are the movements by which a regiment passes from one formation to another; evolutions of the line are the corresponding movements of two or more regiments.

EXECUTION.—The carrying into effect any order. This must be done with promptness on the reception of a command.

**FILE.**—The import of this term depends on the number of ranks; in infantry formations in 3 ranks a file would be 3 men; in cavalry formations in 2 ranks a *file* consists of 2 men, mounted or dismounted; when there is but one rank a file is only 1 man; in general a file is 1 man for every rank in the formation; a *file of men* in common parlance is 2 private soldiers. In file, the men stand one behind the other.

**FILE-LEADER** is the front man of the file.

**FILE-CLOSERS** are the non-commissioned officers, posted 1 yard behind the rear rank; but sometimes commissioned officers thus posted act as file-closers.

**FRONT** is the direction perpendicular and *before* the line or column; the reverse of *rear*.

**FLANK.**—The right or left side of a column or line.

**FLANK-MARCH.**—A movement to the right or left, commencing by a wheel over a quarter circle.

**FORMATION.**—The mode or order of arranging troops; also the act of placing the fractions of corps in line or column.

**FORAGE.**—Food for animals; as a *verb*, to range over the country in quest of provisions for man and beast.

**FORAGERS.**—Soldiers detailed to impress or otherwise collect food, or anything else for public service.

**FORAGER'S CHARGE.**—A charge in open and extended order, each trooper acting separately and according to circumstances.

**FIELD-OFFICERS.**—Those above the rank of captain and not being of the staff; but field officers by rank often serve on the staff.

**GUIDE.**—The trooper, either sergeant, corporal or private, by whose march that of the others on his right or left is regulated.

**GUIDE OF THE COLUMN** is the man on one of the flanks of the front rank of a column, who is charged with the direction of the march.



**GUIDE OF THE MARCH IN LINE.**—The sergeant, file-closer of one of the wings, who in the march in line, replaces the particular guide, when the latter places himself in the line of officers, to ensure the direction of the march by serving as an intermediate point.

**GENERAL GUIDES** are the two sergeants who, in the formation of a regiment, mark the point where the right and left flanks are to rest; they are selected in the first and last squadrons, and are under the orders of the Adjutant and Sergeant-Major, for the tracing of lines

**GUIDES PRINCIPAL.**—The *principal guides* are the sergeants who serve to mark the intermediate points of formation in line. The sergeants file-closers of the 1st and 4th platoons are the principal guides of their squadrons.

**GUIDES PARTICULAR** are the sergeants who place themselves on the line of formation to mark the front of their squadrons as they arrive. The two sergeants of the flanks, who are not counted in the rank, are the particular guides of their squadrons. In marching, the position of the guide who regulates the movement of the line or column is indicated by the commands *guide left* or *guide right*; as a general rule the *guide* is *left* when the column is *right* in *front*, and *vice-versa*, unless especially ordered otherwise; in the oblique march the guide is on the side toward which the oblique is made, and when the primitive direction is resumed, the guide is where he was before obliquing.

In columns composed of cavalry and infantry, the cavalry guides cover the 2d file of the subdivisions of infantry, on the side of the guides.

In line, officers in front of squadrons align themselves on the rear rank of infantry.

**GALLOP.**—The speed at the slowest gallop is 300 yards per minute.

**GUIDON.**—A small pennon or flag carried on the *left* of the 1st and 3d platoons.

**GATHER HORSE.**—This is the sign by which the trooper prepares his horse for any movement. It is made by raising the bridle hand and drawing it slightly towards the body, at the same time closing the legs a little, behind the girths.

**HAUNCHES.**—The hinder portions of the horse in advance of the buttocks and after the last ribs.

**INTERVAL.**—The lateral space between squadrons, or troops, or fractions of troops.

**INVERSE.**—Opposite to what is customary and natural.

**INVERSE ORDER.**—An arrangement reversing the ordinary and natural relative positions; when the subdivisions of a corps are in inverse order, their *right* is where their left would naturally be.

**INVERSION.**—The change from the natural to the inverse order.

**INFANTRY.**—Foot soldiers; but infantry is sometimes mounted temporarily for rapid movements.

**LIGHT HORSE.**—Cavalry lightly armed and equipped; now synonymous with light cavalry or light dragoons.

**LINE, or *Line of Battle.***—That order or disposition of troops, in which all the companies, squadrons, &c., stand in the same row or line, in 1, 2, or 3 ranks; the line being either curved or straight.

**LANCE.**—A weapon with a wooden shaft and metallic head and point; much used among the semi-civilized races; also used to some extent, by European cavalry, but little used by ours. The length varies from 8 to 11 feet,  $10\frac{1}{2}$  being the most approved length from butt to point.

**MANŒUVRES.**—Tactical changes of position by troops.

**MOVEMENT** is nearly allied to *manœuvre*; equally so to *march*, each term implying change of position; but a *manœuvre* is generally considered to embrace several *movements* or *marches*.

**MARCH.**—The word of execution at which the required movement is instantly commenced; also the simul-

taneous or successive movement of troops from one point to another. A *day's march*, without unusual impediments, is from 15 to 17 miles; longer-day's-journeys are called forced marches; these are used only when required by circumstances; light troops often march on urgent occasions from 20 to 40 miles in one day, and small bodies of *cavalry* have, in retreat or pursuit, accomplished 90 miles in less than 24 hours.

Such marches are, of course, destructive to man and beast and must not be allowed, except when vitally essential to the success of important enterprises.

**OBLIQUE.**—A direction between front and flank.

**OBLIQUE MARCH.**—A march gaining ground to the flank without changing front.

In the *individual* oblique march, *each man* executes an oblique movement; making a quarter-turn to the right or left as ordered.

**OBLIQUE MARCH BY TROOP** is executed by the movement, at the same time of each of the sub-divisions of a troop in line. In general the different changes of front of squadron require oblique movement by the half-wheeling of sub-divisions.

**OBSTACLE.**—Whatever obstructs the march, requiring a temporary reduction of the extent of front.

**ORGANIZATION.**—Arrangement and distribution of the divisions, sub-divisions, and corps of every sort, under suitable chiefs, into effective bodies.

**PACE.**—In cavalry, *one yard*; the pace or step, when not mounted, is 28 inches.

**PICKET.**—A short stake to which the trooper attaches the rein or rope which is to confine his horse in the camp or bivouac. It should be at least 18 inches long, and of tough, elastic material. The animal is best confined by a strap around the pastern.

**PIVOT.**—The man or flank which in a *wheel* turns without gaining or losing ground, and in a **TURN**

marches over a short curved path or arc of circle ; in 2 ranks the front rank man is pivot.

In *wheeling*, the pivot is said to be *fixed*, because it turns on its own centre without advancing or receding.

In *turning*, the pivot is said to be moveable, because it marches on an arc of circle.

The TURN is sometimes called a WHEEL on a moveable pivot.

Where there are more than one single file, the arc is increased in proportion to the number of files abreast. Single files turn on an arc 3 yards long. But the *pivot man* of any number in line, from 2 to 15 inclusive, turn on an arc of 5 yards.

The curved path or *arc*, moved over by a pivot—

Of twos, fours, sections of 8 files, and platoons of 12, is 5 yards.

Of Divisions of 24 files, is 10 yards.

Of Squadrons of 48 files, is 20 yards.

Of Platoons of 16 files, is 6 yards.

Of Divisions of 32 files, is 12 yards.

Of Squadrons of 64 files, is 24 yards.

The above is the length of the pivot-arcs in the wheel, or rather *turn* over a *quarter of a circle* ; the arc will be shortened or lengthened as the turn is less or more than 90 degrees

PIVOT-FLANK is that flank around which is executed the wheel into line in natural order.

PLATOON.—The fourth of a squadron, or the half of a division ; it is composed of 12 files in the squadron of 48 ; of 16 files in the squadron of 64 ; when it has 16 files, it is sub-divided into SECTIONS of 8 files.

PLOYMENT.—The movement from regiments in line, to close column ; it is the reverse of *deployment*, the latter being the movement from column into line.

POINTS.—Points of direction, or *fixed points*, serve to point out the direction in which a troop in line or column is to march ; also to mark the right and left of lines.

*Intermediate points* are those taken between the fixed points, to preserve the exactness of direction and straightness of the lines.

**QUARTE** (pronounced *Carte*.)—The position of the right hand, holding the sabre with the fingers to the left, nails upward; opposite to tierce.

**RANK**.—Relative grade or degree among military men; a *rank* of soldiers is a row of them side by side, or abreast. Cavalry is organized in 1 or in 2 ranks; the single or 1 *rank* system is believed by experienced officers to suit our service best.

**RANK AND FILE**.—The order of the common soldier; in common phrase, it is applied to all who are not commissioned officers. In this book it is limited to its strict signification, viz: *those who compose the ranks and the files*, therefore excluding all who are not counted into fours.

**REGIMENT**.—The command of a colonel; 3 to 5 squadrons are understood as forming a regiment; these latter numbers are the most approved for cavalry manœuvres and 3 are preferable to 5.

**REVERSE FLANK**.—The flank opposite to the pivot and usually opposite to the guide.

**RIFLE**.—The short breech-loading rifle is the best arm for our mounted service; in battle the troopers should be dismounted when circumstances permit, using the rifle on foot and mounting again when necessary to pursue or retreat.

**SABRE**.—The cavalry sabre should be very slightly curved, as light as consistent with strength and the point more relied on than the edge.

**SCHABRAQUE** (pronounced *Shab-rack*,) is the saddle cover; it should be water-proof.

**SQUAD** is usually from 4 to 12 men united in 1 rank for drill.

**SQUADRON**.—48 or 64 files of mounted soldiers, divided into 4 platoons, 2 platoons making 1 division.

- SKIRMISHERS.—Light troops thrown forward in advance of the main body to observe the movements of the enemy, check his advance, and prevent surprise.
- STRATEGY.—The movements and operations of armed bodies when not within reach of projectiles.
- STAFF.—Officers and non-commissioned officers not immediately connected with the line; those of the quartermaster's department; inspectors, paymasters, adjutants, &c., are of this class; there is a medical staff also, a general staff, brigade staff, and a regimental staff.
- TACTICS.—The movements of armed bodies when in reach of projectiles or weapons.
- TAMPION.—A cylindrical piece of wood or other material to close up the muzzle of a gun.
- TIERCE.—Opposite to *quarte*, the position of the sword-hand when the finger-nails are downward or to the right.
- TROOP.—Any number of armed horsemen; it is usually applied to a company or division of 2 platoons.
- TROOPER.—An armed horseman.
- TROT.—The cavalry movement, intermediate between the walk and the gallop; *the common trot* is about 240 yards per minute, the TROT OUT is from 275 to 300 yards per minute.
- TURN.—A sort of wheel in which the pivot is moveable, or gains ground.
- UNIT.—A sub-division or part of armed bodies, most regarded in the organization of those bodies; thus the *squadron* is the proper *unit* of a *regiment*.
- VAULT.—To mount without stirrups, by leaping or springing from the ground.
- WHEEL.—A movement to the right or left in which one flank turns in its own place; see *pivot* and *turn*. The definitions of wheel and turn are peculiar to mounted troops. The latter *touch boot* exclusively to the pivot, *dress* by both flanks, but especially by the wheeling or marching flank.

# INDEX.

---

## PART I.—DRILL OF THE TROOPER.

	Page.
First lessons, - - - - -	11
To conduct the horses to the ground, - - - - -	12
Position before mounting, - - - - -	12
Prepare to mount, - - - - -	13
To mount, - - - - -	14
Bridle hand, - - - - -	14
Length of stirrup,, - - - - -	15
Position of foot in stirrup, - - - - -	15
Form ranks, - - - - -	16
Position mounted, - - - - -	16
Use of reins, - - - - -	18
Use of legs, - - - - -	19
Effect of reins, - - - - -	19
To march, - - - - -	20
To halt, - - - - -	21
To turn, - - - - -	21
To turn about, - - - - -	22
Quarter turn; oblique, - - - - -	23
Rein back, - - - - -	24
Dismount, - - - - -	25
File off, - - - - -	26
Forward, trot, - - - - -	27
Trot out, - - - - -	28
Slow trot, gallop, - - - - -	29
Right or left pass, - - - - -	30
Movements of bridle hand, - - - - -	31
Halt; turn; turn-about, - - - - -	32

	Page.
Quarter turn ; rein back ; the spur, - - -	33
Preparation for sabre exercise, - - -	34
Draw sabre, - - -	35
Present ; carry ; return sabre, - - -	36
Inspection of sabre, - - -	37
Raise sabre, - - -	38
Open and close files, - - -	39
Cuts, thrusts, moulinet, - - -	40
Tierce, quarte, guard, - - -	41
Moulinet, - - -	42
Tierce point ; quarte point, - - -	43
Left point ; right point, - - -	44
Rear point ; against infantry, right and left point,	45
Front cut ; right cut ; left cut, - - -	46
Rear cut ; right, left and rear in quarte and tierce,	47
Parry, - - -	48
Against infantry—parry, - - -	49
Manual for Colt's revolver, - - -	51-55
To load the repeating rifle, - - -	57
To load with powder and ball, - - -	57
Manual of breech-loader, - - -	58
Self-priming breech-loader, - - -	59
Inspection of revolver pistol, - - -	60
Inspection of breech-loader, - - -	61

## PART II.—PLATOON DRILL.

Platoon in 2 ranks ; posts, - - -	62-64
Squadron in line ; posts, - - -	64-65
Column of twos and fours, - - -	66-67
Column of platoons, - - -	67-68
Column of divisions, - - -	69
Form platoon (company or squadron), - - -	69
Right dress ; count by fours, - - -	70
Alignment, - - -	71
By file, right backwards dress, - - -	72
By twos, right or left dress, - - -	73
To correct the alignment, - - -	74



	Page.
To open and close ranks, . . . . .	75-76
To rein back, . . . . .	76-77
To break by files, . . . . .	77
To march in column by files. . . . .	78
To change direction, . . . . .	78
Halt; forward trot; oblique, . . . . .	79
Platoon, front into line, . . . . .	80
Left into line, . . . . .	81
On right into line. . . . .	82
On left into line, . . . . .	82
By twos (or fours), . . . . .	83
Direct march by twos (or fours), . . . . .	84
Head of column left (or right), . . . . .	84
Left turn, . . . . .	85
Left (or right) oblique, . . . . .	86
Column of twos or fours, front into line, . . . . .	87
Column of twos or fours, left into line, . . . . .	88
Column of twos or fours, on right into line . . . . .	89
Left into single rank, . . . . .	90
Right into 2 ranks, . . . . .	91
To form twos or fours at same gait, . . . . .	92
To break by twos or file, same gait, . . . . .	93
By file, march, . . . . .	94
Form twos—trot, . . . . .	95
Form fours—trot, . . . . .	96
To break by twos and by file, doubling gait, . . . . .	97
March in line, . . . . .	98
“ “ “ . . . . .	99
Open files, . . . . .	100
Close files, . . . . .	101
Open and close files, marching, . . . . .	102
Countermarch, . . . . .	103
Front, halt, . . . . .	104
Wheelings, . . . . .	105
Fixed pivot, . . . . .	106
In circle wheel, . . . . .	107
“ “ . . . . .	108
“ “ . . . . .	109
“ “ . . . . .	110

	Page.
Platoon right (or left) wheel, . . . . .	111
"    "    about wheel, - - - - .	112
"    "    half wheel, - - - - .	112
Moveable pivot, - - - - .	113
Left (or right) turn, - - - - .	114
Individual oblique, - - - - .	115
Platoon marching in line, to break by fours or twos, - - - - .	116
Platoon marching, by twos or fours, form platoon,	117
By fours (or twos)—trot, - - - - .	118
Form platoon—trot, - - - - .	119
Form platoon—gallop, - - - - .	120
By fours, left (or right) wheel, - - - - .	120
By fours, left (or right) about wheel, - - - - .	121
Halt, right dress, front, - - - - .	122
Forward, guide right (or left), - - - - .	122
To march the column of fours to the rear - - - - .	123
To gain ground, right or left, - - - - .	123
Movements by fours, - - - - .	124
"    "    - - - - .	125
To charge by platoon, - - - - .	126
The charge, - - - - .	127
Rallying, - - - - .	128
Skirmishing, - - - - .	129-134
Prepare to fight on foot, - - - - .	135
Dragoons on foot, - - - - .	136
Sling and unsling carbine, - - - - .	137
Leaping the ditch and bar, - - - - .	138
"    "    "    - - - - .	139

### PART III.—THE SQUADRON.

The squadron, - - - - .	140
Positions in line, - - - - .	141
Positions in column, twos or fours, - - - - .	142
Directions, - - - - .	143
Count by fours, - - - - .	144

	Page.
Successive alignment, - - -	144
"          "          - - -	145
To open and close ranks, - - -	146
To break the squadron by fours, - - -	147
Column of fours, front into line, - - -	148
"          "          "    left    "    "    - - -	149
"          "          "    on right into line, - - -	150
Rapidity of gaits, - - -	151
To form in one rank and two ranks, - - -	151
Column with distance, - - -	152
Changes of direction, - - -	153
"          "          "          - - -	154
Left or right oblique, - - -	155
Change of gait, - - -	155
In column of platoons, to break by fours, - - -	156
By twos; by fours; by file, - - -	157
Column by file, form twos, - - -	158
Column by twos, form fours, - - -	159
Column by fours, form platoons, - - -	159
By fours—trot, - - -	160
Form twos—trot, - - -	161
Form fours—trot; form platoons—trot, - - -	162
Platoons left-about wheel, - - -	163
To halt the column, - - -	164
Left into line wheel, - - -	165
Column with distance, left in front, - - -	166
Break by the right to march to the left, - - -	167
Form line to the right by inversion, - - -	168
Break by the right to the rear to march to the left, - - -	169
On right into line, - - -	170
By inversion on left into line, - - -	171
To break by platoons, - - -	172
Front into line, - - -	173
Break by platoons and move forward, - - -	174
Line to the front by inversion, - - -	175
Platoons right wheel, head of column left, - - -	176
Line faced to rear on rear of column, - - -	177
Right about wheel, by inversion front into line, - - -	178
Platoons right wheel, head of column right, - - -	179

	Page.
Line faced to the rear, on head of column, -	179
Line faced to rear, by inversion on head of column,	180
Movements by fours, - - - -	181
"    "    "    - - - -	182
Direct march in line, - - - -	183
"    "    "    "    - - - -	184
"    "    "    "    - - - -	185
Flank files forward; halt, - - - -	186
Squadron forward; march, - - - -	186
Squadron, halt, - - - -	187
Countermarch, - - - -	189
Wheelings, - - - -	190
Fixed pivot; wheeling in circle, - - - -	191
Right or left; right about or left about, wheel, -	193
Moveable pivot, turning, - - - -	194
Right oblique, - - - -	195
Platoons right half ( and left half ) wheel, -	196
By fours right wheel, - - - -	197
By fours left wheel, - - - -	198
By fours right about wheel, - - - -	199
Platoons left wheel, - - - -	200
Platoons right about, - - - -	201
Break by platoons, marching, - - - -	202
Form squadron, - - - -	202
Break by platoons, doubling the gait, - - - -	203
Form squadron—trot, - - - -	204
Passing obstacles, - - - -	205
In each platoon by fours or twos—trot, - - - -	206
Form platoons, - - - -	207
Charge—rallying—skirmishing, - - - -	208
Charge, - - - -	209
To the charge, march, - - - -	211
As foragers, - - - -	212
Rallying, - - - -	213
Skirmishing, - - - -	214
Whole squadron as skirmishers, - - - -	215
Three first platoons as skirmishers, - - - -	216
One division as skirmishers, - - - -	217
1st or 4th platoon prepare to fight on foot, -	218

	Page.
1st or 2d division prepare to fight on foot, -	219
Column by divisions, - - - - -	220
Form divisions, - - - - -	221
Column by divisions, by platoons march, -	222
Form divisions—trot, - - - - -	223
By platoons—trot, - - - - -	224
Divisions, break by right to march to left, -	225
Squadron of 64 files, - - - - -	226-227

## PART IV.—SINGLE RANKS.

Single rank formations, - - - - -	228
Positions, - - - - -	229
In one rank form squadron, - - - - -	230
Count by fours; prepare to mount, - - - - -	231
By files to the right, . - - - -	231
Side of the guides. - - - - -	232
Front, halt, - . - - -	233

## DRILL OF MOUNTED RIFLES. 235

### ARTICLE I.

	Section.
Composition of company and posts, etc, - - - - -	1
To mount, - - - - -	2
To dismount and to link, - - - - -	3
Form and course of inspection, - - - - -	4

### ARTICLE II.

Skirmish drill; preliminary remarks, . - - - -	5
To take open order and return to close order (in line,) - - - - -	6
Open order in line—to break into fours, twos, and files, - - - - -	7
In column of file to form twos, open order, .	8
In column of file to form fours, open order, -	9

	Section.
In column of twos, open order, to form fours, open order, - - - - -	10
In column of fours to form twos, open or close order, - - - - -	11
In column of twos to form files, open or close order,	12
To deploy as skirmishers from line, - - -	13

### ARTICLE III.

In open order column of fours; action front and left, - - - - -	14
In open order column of fours; action rear and left,	15
In open order column of fours; action right, -	16
In open order column of fours; action left, -	17
In open order column of twos; action front and left,	18
In open order column of twos; action rear and left,	19
In open order column of twos; action right, -	20
In open order column of twos; action left, -	21

### ARTICLE IV.

To deploy as skirmishers when dismounted, -	22
To deploy as skirmishers from column of fours,	23
After deploying as skirmishers to commence action,	24
Column of fours open order to return to close order,	25
Column of twos open order to return to close order,	26
Column of file to form fours in close order, -	27

### ARTICLE V.

#### *Changes of the Manual.*

To sling and unsling rifles, - - - - -	28
Concluding remarks, - - - - -	29





















